

ગુજરાત રાજ્યના શિક્ષણવિભાગના પત્ર-ક્રમાંક
મશબ/1215/170-179/છ, તારીખ : 26-02-2016-થી મંજૂર

SOCIAL SCIENCE

Standard 9



PLEDGE

India is my country.

All Indians are my brothers and sisters.

I love my country and I am proud of its rich and varied heritage.

I shall always strive to be worthy of it.

I shall respect my parents, teachers and all elders and treat everyone with courtesy.

I pledge my devotion to my country and its people.

My happiness lies in their well-being and prosperity.

Price : ₹ 50.00



Gujarat State Board of School Textbooks

‘Vidyayan’, Sector 10-A, Gandhinagar -382 010

© Gujarat State Board of School Textbooks, Gandhinagar
 Copyright of this book is reserved by Gujarat State Board of School Textbooks. No reproduction of this book in whole or in part, in any form, is permitted without written permission of the Director of the Board.

Subject Advisors

Dr. G. T. Sarvaiya
 Prof. Dinesh M. Shukla
 Prof. Y. P. Pathak

Writers

Shri Salim S. Qureshi (Convener)
 Dr. Bimal S. Bhavsar
 Shri Devangkumar R. Desai
 Shri Prakash K. Vaghela
 Dr. Jignasha H. Joshi
 Shri Rajendrakumar B. Mehta
 Shri Vasantrai M. Teraiya
 Shri Manish Bhupendra Soni
 Shri Nanda A. Vyas
 Dr. Shahida K. Khansaheb
 Shri Bhaveshbhai Pandya

Translators

Dr. N. G. Dixit Dr. Asha Rani Anto
 Shri Jasmine Shaji Shri Jasmine Ajmeri

Reviewers

Shri Kerman J. Patel
 Dr. Neepa V. Vyas
 Shri H. I. Sarvaiya
 Shri Victor Christi
 Shri Jayalakshmi Krishnamurthi
 Shri Neha H. Dharmadarshi
 Shri Antony Arputham
 Shri Ethiel J. Sacha
 Shri Prakash G. Shukla

Artist

Shree Graphics
 Parita Graphics

Co-Ordination

Shri Ashish H. Borisagar
 (Subject Co-Ordinator : Maths.)

Preparation and Planning

Shri Haresh S. Limbachiya
 (Deputy Director : Academic)

Printing and Planning

Shri Haresh S. Limbachiya
 (Deputy Director : Production)

PREFACE

Gujarat State Board of School Textbooks has prepared new textbooks as per the new curricula developed by the Gujarat State Secondary and Higher Secondary Education Board and which has been sanctioned by the Education Department of the Government of Gujarat. A panel of experts from Universities/Colleges, Teachers Training Colleges and Schools have put lot's of efforts in preparing the manuscript of the subject. It is then reviewed by another panel of experts to suggest changes and filter out the mistakes, if any. The suggestions of the reviewers are considered thoroughly and necessary changes are made in the manuscript. Thus, the Textbook Board takes sufficient care in preparing an error free manuscript. The Board is vigilant even while printing the textbooks.

The Board expresses the pleasure to publish the Textbook of **Social Science** for **Std. 9** which is a translated version of Gujarati. The Textbook Board is thankful to all those who have helped us in preparing this textbook. However, we welcome suggestions to enhance the quality of the textbook.

H. N. Chavda

Director

Date : 30-3-2016

Dr. Nitin Pethani

Executive President

Gandhinagar

First Edition : 2016

Published by : H. N. Chavda, Director, on behalf of Gujarat State Board of School Textbooks, 'Vidyayan', Sector 10-A, Gandhinagar

Printed by :

FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

It shall be the duty of every citizen of India * :

- (a) to abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem;
- (b) to cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom;
- (c) to uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;
- (d) to defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so;
- (e) to promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women;
- (f) to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture;
- (g) to protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wildlife, and to have compassion for living creatures;
- (h) to develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;
- (i) to safeguard public property and to abjure violence;
- (j) to strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement;
- (k) to provide proper opportunities by parents or guardian for education to their children or the ward of 6 to 14 years of age.

* Constitution of India : Section 51-C

INDEX

● Concept of Social Science	1
● Unit 1 : Twentieth Century : The World and India	2
1. Rise of British Rule in India	3
2. First World War and Russian Revolution	10
3. Movement Towards A New World	15
4. National Movements in India	23
5. Movement Towards Independence	31
6. World After 1945	39
7. Post - Independence India	47
● Unit 2 : Making of Modern Nation	55
8. Framing of Constitution and Its Features	56
9. Fundamental Rights, Fundamental Duties and Directive Principles of State Policy	65
10. Organs of Government	73
11. Indian Judiciary	86
12. Indian Democracy	93
● Unit 3 : INDIA – Its Lands and People	98
13. India : Location, Geological Structure and Physiography-I	99
14. India : Location, Geological Structure and Physiography-II	106
15. Drainage System	114
16. Climate	121
17. Natural Vegetation	131
18. Wild Life	137
19. India : Human Life Style	143
20. Disaster Management	148



CERTIFICATE OF THE MAPS

1. © Government of India, Copyright 2016
2. The responsibility for the correctness of internal details rests with the publisher.
3. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate base line.
4. The external boundaries and coastlines of India agree with the Record/Master Copy certified by Survey of India.
5. The state boundaries between Uttarakhand & Uttar Pradesh, Bihar & Jharkhand and Chattisgarh & Madhya Pradesh have not been verified by the Governments concerned.
6. The spellings of names in this map, have been taken from various sources.

Concept of Social Science

As per National Curriculum Framework (2005): Social Science consists of various subjects. Its content includes subjects like History, Geography, Political Science, Economics and Sociology. Social Science is an important subject as it makes the students humane, well informed, intellectual and responsible citizens. NCF 2005 outlines Social Science as no less important than Maths or Science. Teachers should give due importance to the subject of Social Science.

Professor Yashpal propounds that education is not any material thing that can be imparted through postal correspondence or teacher. The foundation of rich and productive education lies in the physical and cultural background of a student and they are nurtured by the interaction of students with their parents, teachers, peers and various groups.

NCF 2005, in conjunction with the syllabi of various subjects, has reframed the entire syllabus.

As per the new syllabus, this textbook has adopted a multidisciplinary approach and it mainly includes the subject matter of History, Geography, Political Science, Economics and Sociology. A genuine effort has been made to combine the various facets of human society in context of time and place. The bulk of content and concepts have been reduced. In place of four textbooks of Social Science, only one concise text book is presented. The subject matter is divided over three units such that the correlation of the entire subject matter is uniformly presented over the entire text book.

Unit 1 : Twentieth Century-World and India: In this unit the focus is on main events that occurred in the world in the Twentieth Century and the struggle of Indian Independence. In this unit an emphasis is laid upon the study of Contemporary India which is included in Unit 2.

Unit 2 : Making of a Modern Nation. This unit discusses the reconstruction of India in post independence era, the drafting of Indian Constitution, its main features, the structure of Indian Government, fundamental rights and duties and Indian democracy. This unit helps to understand the functioning of the largest democracy of the world.

Unit 3 : Land and People: This unit discusses the land of India, nature and people, India's rich natural resources and natural environment. This unit helps to understand the variety and richness of our environment.

It is expected that this text book will help to make the students well informed, intellectual and responsible citizens thereby contributing towards the development and construction of a strong nation.



Unit 1 : Twentieth Century: The World and India

During the twentieth century the world has witnessed long term results of the research and progress made in various fields of human life. Activities of Colonialism that spread in Asia and Africa created enmity among the European powers interested in acquiring Colonies and that resulted in World War I, Russian Bolshevik revolution in Russia, and the rise of 'dictatorship' in Germany, Italy, Spain etc. and World War II, step by step, in world politics. The desire for colonialism and imperialism had shaken the entire world by the use of atomic and other destructive weapons. Of course, the desire, for peace and safety manifested in hearts of mankind, gave birth to the United Nations (UN). The race of expanding spheres of influence that continued between United States of America and Soviet Russia resulted in the Cold War. There were two centers of the Cold War: Washington DC and Moscow.

At the end of the twentieth century, the spirit of nationalism that arose from people's pride, divided powerful Russia, the Wall of Berlin was demolished and achieved the unification of Germany. These were unexpected and thrilling events. However the sudden flush of communism could not be prevented; European and Asian countries including China came under its influence. Oh! Some part of the world was colored in 'Red'. Yes, this is only one side of world politics.

The second side of world politics is also much strong and powerful and it is evident in the movements of 'liberalism' that has spread in Asia, Africa and other parts of the world. This movement gave rise to fight for nationalism and freedom in many countries including India. It created and developed such a systematic and spirit of newer aspects of all round sacrifice for achieving national independence that it inspired and encouraged Asian and African countries.

This unit describes the Indian national struggle which created such an image wherein the North-South, the East-West, young and old, men and women were made enthusiastic participants and this contributed towards a glorious history. It also includes events of revolutionaries who fought for the independence of their motherland and accepted martyrdom which will inculcate self-respect, patriotism and nationalism among children. Necessary maps and pictures have been provided to clarify the write-up. Industrial Revolution has been discussed in this unit with the aim that students understand the importance of how discoveries made in the field of science and technology can lead to the progress of future generation.

We have achieved the capacity and efficiency where by we can provide able leadership because of the independence that we have achieved with great difficulty, the internal and emotional integration as well as the responsibility we have taken up for the allround development of the nation.



1

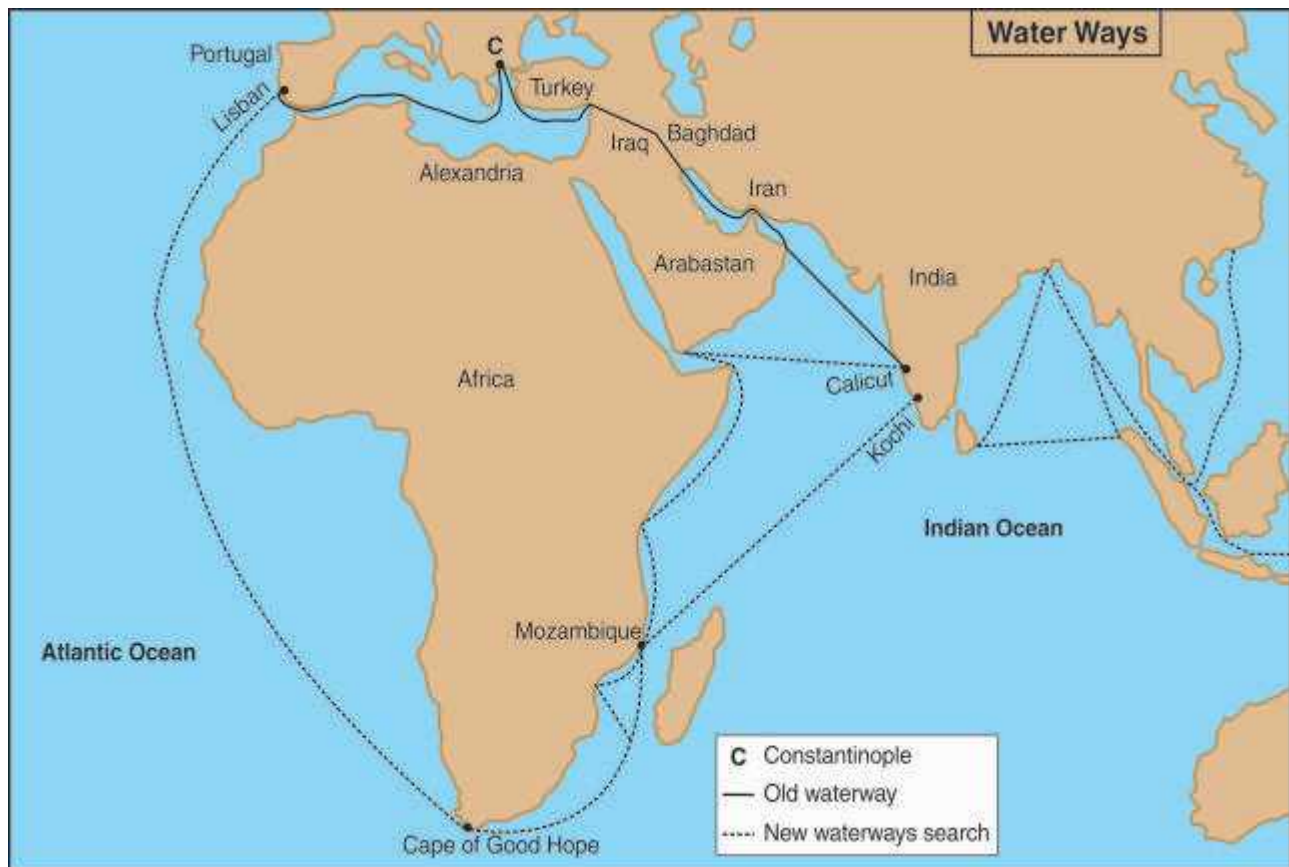
Rise of British Rule in India

Since the ancient period, India has enjoyed an incomparable position in the whole world due to its economic, cultural and religious inheritance. Due to the economic prosperity and cultural inheritance, people from different nations of the world came to India. There was a lot of demand for the Indian spices, muslin, silk cloth, indigo etc in the European countries. Trade between India and Europe was carried out through land route and sea route and at the centre of these routes was Istanbul (Constantinople) in Turkey.

After the conquest of Constantinople in 1453 A.D. by Turkish Muslims, the sea route through Constantinople (Istanbul) was closed for the Europeans. Since they could not do without the spices, the Europeans felt compelled to discover a new sea route. So an era of geographical discoveries began.

Discovery of sea route to India

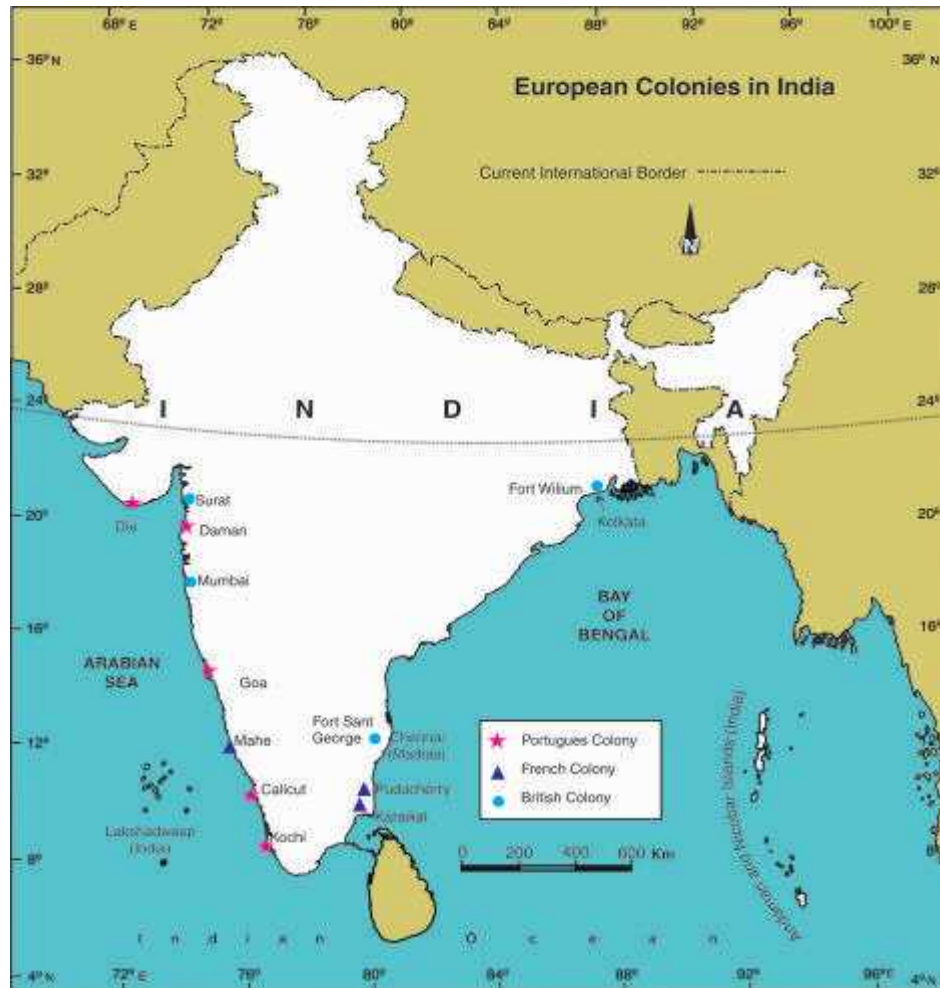
With the inspiration, encouragement and economic help from the Portuguese King Prince Henry, some brave people began efforts to discover new sea route. Many great men tried to discover sea route to India namely Bartholomew Diaz who discovered the 'Cape of Good Hope'. With the economic assistance from the King of Spain, Christopher Columbus began his adventure of discovering a new sea route, which again came to a stop at an island, presently known as West Indies, situated in the Atlantic Ocean. Columbus, who had believed through out his life that he had discovered a new sea route to India, had actually discovered a new land. Since this clarification was made by Amerigo Vespucci, this new land began to be known as 'America'.

**1.1 Sea Route to India**

The Portuguese sailor Vasco-da-Gama discovered the sea route to India in 1498 A.D. When he reached Calicut in the western coast of India, he was welcomed by the then King Zamorin and allowed to carry out business there. Thus, this is considered as an important event in the world as this opened the doors for other Europeans to come to India.

Arrival of Europeans to India (Arrival of the British and establishment of trade centres)

The Portuguese were the first to arrive in India for trade after the discovery of the sea route to India. Within a span of a hundred years, the Portuguese took control of several territories like Diu, Daman, Goa, Cochin, Malacca etc. Inspired by the Portuguese success in trade, the Dutch (from Holland) and the Danish (from Denmark) arrived in India for trade. The English traders established the East India Company to carry out trade with India. In 1600 A.D., when Queen Elizabeth of England gave the permission to the East India Company to carry out trade with the eastern countries, the first ship, under the leadership of Captain William Hawkins arrived in Surat. But due to the dominance and opposition from the Portuguese, they were not allowed to establish their trade there. But finally, the East India Company got the permission from the Mughal Emperor



1.2 European Colonies

Jehangir and thus the British East India Company established its first trade centre (Kothi) in Surat in 1613 A.D. Initially, the Company established its trade centres in Surat, Bharuch and Ahmedabad.

But due to the strong presence of the Marathas in this region, the Company sensed danger to its existence and hence moved towards the south and east directions where they set up their centres in Machlipattanam (Andhra Pradesh), Saint George (Chennai) and Fort William (Kolkata). Mumbai became their headquarter in 1687 A.D.

The French East India Company arrived in India for trade in 1668 A.D. and eventually set up their trade centres in Mahe, Karaickal, Pondicherry (Puducherry), Chandranagar, Machlipattanam etc. In the 18th century, the English and the French were constantly busy establishing their rule in the entire world and conquering more territories. Between 1746 and 1763, there were three Mysore Wars between the French East India Company and the British East India Company in India which the French East India Company lost, thus, making easy, the expansion of the British East India Company. Thus, at the end of this battle for power, the Portuguese were left

with Diu, Daman, Goa, while French had their trade centres at Chandranagar, Mahe, Karaickal and Pondicherry. Meanwhile, the Dutch had to leave forever.

Battle of Plassey

Siraj-ud-Daula was ruling over Bengal. Due to his impulsive nature, he had some opponents in his state. During this period, the British East India Company built a fortress around the trade centre in Kolkata on pretext of security reasons, without taking the permission of the Nawab. But Nawab Siraj-ud-Daula destroyed the fortress. When this news reached Madras (Chennai), a small army of the Company, lead by Robert Clive, reached Bengal in order to help the Kolkata trade centre.

In spite of the army of the East India Company being strong, they realised that it was not easy to defeat the Nawab's army. So Robert Clive resorted to treachery. A conspiracy was planned in order to defeat the Nawab, in which the Nawab's commander-in-chief Mir Jafar and Seth Amichand were coaxed to join. On the pretext that the Nawab is unnecessarily harassing the people, a war was declared at a ground near a village named Plassey.

- The Battle of Plassey was fought on 23rd June, 1757 A.D..
- The battlefield of Plassey is situated 38 km from Murshidabad (West Bengal).

According to the plan, Mir Jafar lost the battle. Siraj-ud-Daula was defeated. Due to Robert Clive's treachery, the Battle of Plassey ended in just half a day. The Company, as a result, got a freehold over 24 Parganas. Mir Jafar was made the Nawab of Bengal. Thus, the foundation of the Company's rule in India was laid with the Battle of Plassey in 1757.

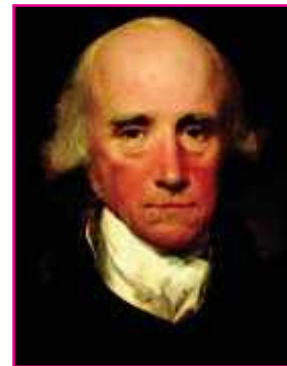
Battle of Buxar

The Britishers made Mir Jafar, the Nawab of Bengal and under different pretexts, tried to extract plenty of wealth from him. Due to their greed to gain more powers, the East India Company managed to dethrone Mir Jafar and made Mir Qasim, the Nawab of Bengal. Mir Qasim proved to be more ambitious than Mir Jafar and thus became a threat for the Company. Hence, Mir Qasim was removed and Mir Jafar was again made the Nawab. Mir Qasim took refuge with the Nawab of Awadh. During this time, the Mughal emperor Shah Alam had come to Awadh. So, all three of them decided to join hands and fight the Company unitedly and thus declared a war.

At Buxar, the East India Company fought against the united army (22nd October, 1764), in which the united army lost. Thus the Company got the Diwani rights (right to collect revenue) to Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.

Expansion of the Company Rule

The English government passed a regulating act in 1773 A.D. according to which the Governor of Bengal was made the Governor General and all the trade and political activities of the Company were brought under his direct control. The Mumbai-Madras Governor and his council were brought under him. Thus, Warren Hastings



Governor General Warren Hastings



Tipu Sultan

became the first Governor General of India. During his tenure, the First Maratha War and the Second Mysore War with Haider Ali of Mysore, was waged. The problems for the East India Company increased because it had to face both the powers simultaneously.

Cornwallis took over as Governor General after Warren Hastings. During the tenure of Cornwallis, the Third Mysore War took place with Tipu Sultan, famously known as the Tiger of Mysore. The Company had to join hands with the Marathas and the Nizam to defeat the Tipu Sultan. Tipu could not win against the combined forces and had to accept the treaty.

After Cornwallis, Sir John Shore became the Governor General. Due to some rigid policies adopted by him, the East India Company's fame declined and Marathas became stronger. So Governor General Wellesley, who came after John Shore, got the responsibility of making the Company supreme in India. For this, Wellesley introduced the Subsidiary Alliance System. The conditions of the System and the states adopted under this are as follows :

Terms and Conditions of Subsidiary Alliance System

- The army trained by the East India Company Government will be provided to the state that accepts the System.
- In return, the state accepting the System will provide for the army or give away provinces with equivalent income to the British.
- Without the permission of the Company, the state will not wage war or sign treaty with other states.
- There will be one English representative in the state assembly.
- Other foreigners not to be employed in the state.

The States - Rulers who accepted the Subsidiary Alliance System

- Nizam ● Mysore ● Awadh ● Gaikwad ● Scindia ● Bhosle ● Holkar



1.5 Wellesley and Subsidiary Alliance System

This System was like “sweet poison”. By implementing this System, Wellesley annexed many provinces and expanded the rule of the East India Company. Governor General Wellesley asked Tipu Sultan to accept the Subsidiary Alliance System, which he refused. For declining the Alliance System, the Company, with support from the Nizam, attacked Mysore in 1799. During this Fourth Mysore War, Tipu lost his life while fighting against the British.

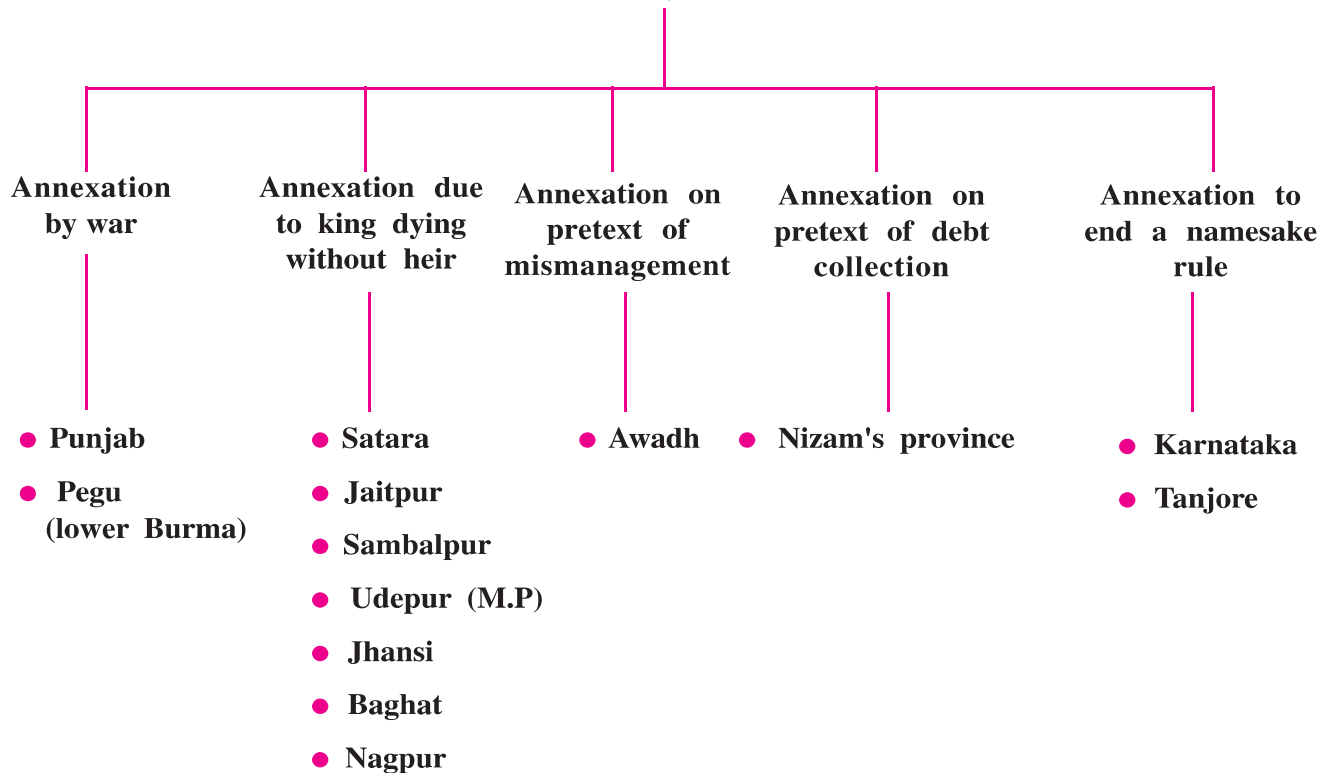
After Wellesley, Hastings came to India as Governor General. He waged a war with Nepal and made the

Gurkhas to join the army. Hastings fought a battle with the Pindharas and took control over them. With the Third Maratha War, the supremacy of the Company was established.

In comparison to the earlier Governor Generals, William Bentinck is known as a “liberal Governor General”. Bentinck believed that the dissatisfaction in different states due to the imperialist policy adopted by the previous Governor Generals could not bring about any unity. So he was very liberal in his deeds.

Dalhousie came to India as the Governor General in 1848. He was a fierce imperialist. Dalhousie adopted the Policy of Annexation for the expansion of the Company and British imperialism in India.

Dalhousie's Policy of Annexation



Besides being an imperialist, Dalhousie was also a reformist. The first railway line in India (between Mumbai-Thane, 1853 A.D.), wireless system between India and England, establishment of public works department, English education etc. were all introduced during his tenure. He passed laws to ban child marriage and advocated widow remarriage.

Within 100 years, from the Battle of Plassey in 1757, the British rule and the empire, both expanded. But, in the process, they had to face the dissatisfaction of the Indian states and this was manifested in the form of the first struggle for independence in 1857 A.D.

Economic impact of the Company

When we evaluate the 100 years of Company rule in India, we realise that, India, which had an enviable position in the world in the previous centuries, became merely a country that produces raw material for England and a prospective market for goods produced in factories. Bengal exported cotton cloth, raw silk, sugar, jute, muslin (1708 to 1756), but after the Dual Power Policy, the glitter of the economic prosperity of Bengal faded. [The Dual Power Policy (Dwimukhi Shasan) was introduced for the first time in Bengal whereby the power of collecting revenue was with the British while the responsibility of people's welfare was with the Nawab. Thus, the British got the power without any responsibility and the Nawab had the responsibility without any power. This was known as the Subsidiary Alliance System which ruined Bengal economically]

The unfair revenue collection policy by the Company made the Indian peasant a debtor. The British government imposed unfair taxes on the Indian cloth industries. They adopted various deceitful practices to ruin the prosperous Indian industries, because of which it completely collapsed. The Indian artisan became poor and

unemployed. The Company traders forced the weavers of Bengal to sign contracts for providing definite quantity of cloth in a short period. If the weaver refused, he would be punished by being lashed or jailed.

Before the arrival of the Company, the Indian villages were self-reliant and prosperous. But under the Company rule, they became dependent and poor.

During the rule of the East India Company, the first railway line between Mumbai and Thane and steamer service between India and England was started and development of the ports in Mumbai, Madras(Chennai) and Kolkata also took place.

Social impact of the Company Rule

During the British administration, the spirit of freedom of speech and thought developed among people due to the development of newspapers. In the Indian society, certain wrong social customs, rites and rituals were prevalent during this time like Sati System, female infanticide, child marriage etc. Raja Ram Mohan Roy, Durgaram Mehta, Behramji Malbari etc. were the stalwarts whose role was instrumental in getting the laws passed with the help of Britishers. As the administrative framework in India was anglicised, there was a demand for people with knowledge of English. English education began to be imparted in India due to Lord Macaulay's endeavours. As recommended by Charles Wood, universities were established in Mumbai, Madras and Kolkata.

A whole class of people with knowledge of English developed because of English education. With the passage of time, this group made demands for social reforms and gave momentum to the process of reforms.

Conclusion

Thus, the East India Company came to India being allured by the prosperity and trade opportunity. The Company rule in India produced certain good and bad results in the political, economic, social and cultural fields. The Company adopted the policy of making England prosperous at the cost of India and the reforms they made in the administration, for their own interest, indirectly proved to be beneficial for India.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions briefly.

- (1) Europeans felt the need to discover a new sea-route to India. Explain the statement.
- (2) What reforms did Dalhousie bring about ?
- (3) What were the important terms and conditions of the Subsidiary Alliance System ?
- (4) Which states were annexed under Dalhousie's Policy of Annexation ?

2. Answer the following questions in detail.

- (1) Give brief information about the Battle of Plassey.
- (2) Explain the economic impact of the Company Rule in India.
- (3) Explain the social impact of the Company Rule in India.

4. Choose the correct options from those given below.

- (1) Who discovered the sea route to India ?

(A) Columbus	(B) Prince Henry
(C) Vasco-da-Gama	(D) Bartholomew Dias

- (2) During whose tenure was the Public Works Department established in India ?
- (A) Wellesley (B) Dalhousie
(C) Warren Hastings (D) William Bentinck
- (3) Which of the following statements is false ?
- (A) The Battle of Plassey was fought in 1757.
(B) The Company got a freehold over 24 Parganas of Bengal due to the Battle of Plassey.
(C) The Company got the Diwani rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa due to the Battle of Plassey.
(D) Siraj-ud-Daula was the Nawab of Bengal during the Battle of Plassey.
- (4) Who became the first Governor General of India ?
- (A) Warren Hastings (B) Wellesley
(C) Dalhousie (D) Canning
- (5) With whom did the British fight the Third Mysore War ?
- (A) Tipu Sultan (B) Marathas
(C) Nizam (D) Haider Ali

Activity

- Collect information on the social and religious reformists of the middle ages and prepare an article on them.
- Prepare a list of states ruled by Indians during the Company Rule in India.
- Collect information about different places discovered and discoveries made during the era of geographical discoveries.
- Collect information about the economic prosperity of India during the ancient and middle ages.

●

The yearning of the western European countries for expansion of the empire and acquire new territories (colonies) resulted in these countries going to Asia and Africa. Thus they established their colonies and expanded their rule. Consequently, there arose a competition between European nations to establish colonies.

This greed for colonisation among the western European nations caused the economic, social and cultural ruin of the Asian-African countries. The result of this on world politics was such that the First World War, Bolshevik Revolution etc. took place.

So dear students, let's study about these details.

Western Europe and Colonialism in Asia-Africa

The western European countries wanted to expand their empire in Asia-Africa. Their greed for colonisation did not spare even their neighbouring countries. Spain had taken control over Netherland, Belgium and Luxemburg. Later on, some of their provinces were captured by France. When the Portuguese king died without an heir, Portugal came under the rule of the Spanish king because of his blood relation. So for six decades, the monopoly of establishing colonies in non-European countries was with Spain.

Similarly, Italy and German states became the victim of the greed of France and Austria. When the European powers were tightening their grip over the Asian and African nations, many of the European nations which had become free, following the footsteps of England, made many of the Afro-Asian nations their colonies.

Colonialism in Asia : After strengthening its grip over India, England expanded its empire to Sri Lanka, Myanmar (Burma), Singapore and Malaysia. England entered China also. But due to the opium trade between England and China, there were wars (1839-1842) which came to be known as Opium Wars in history. China lost this war and thereby lost five of its ports to England where England could carry on their trade and thus expanded their empire. Taking advantage of China's weakness, Japan, Russia, Germany, France, Belgium and America also acquired trade and political rights.

Enormous oil resources in the desert region of West Asia attracted the Europeans to establish colonies there. England, Germany, Russia and America established oil companies in Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and Bahrain and made efforts to take care of their own interests.

Colonialism in Africa : The Dutch established its colony for the first time at the end of 15th century in South Africa. After that, England and France established their colonies in Cape and Algeria in North Africa respectively. The vast provinces of Africa seemed quite suitable for acquiring raw material and selling ready products post Industrial Revolution, because of which European countries competed to establish colonies. King Leopold of Belgium seized the vast provinces of Congo and established his rule. England established its colonies in Egypt, some provinces of East Africa and some of South Africa. France established its colonies in Tunisia, Morocco and West Africa provinces. Germany established its empire in some provinces of East and West Africa. Italy captured the African provinces around the Red Sea. Spain and Portugal also seized some provinces of Africa. A conference for the European nations was held in Berlin (1884-85) in the midst of this competition to establish colonies. Different African territories were divided among the European nations at the end of the conference. Thus the colonial dominance of different European nations was established over the entire Africa.

While on one hand, the greedy European nations were trying to colonise various Asian- African territories, on the other hand, Germany and Italy had completed the process of its respective political unification. Thus, the unified Germany plunged into the competition of industrialisation, commercialisation and colonisation. Thus, these quickly changing global phenomena had exploited some of these countries politically, economically and socially due to which their development had stopped. This had led to the First World War.

Factors that caused First World War

The First World War could be considered as one of the most heartbreaking and unforgettable events of the modern world. Many factors were responsible for this. The First World War began on 1st August, 1914. Germany had defeated France in the Sedan War because of which France had to sign the Frankfurt Treaty (1871) according to which France had to pay a war fine as well as give away two of its provinces, Alsace and Lorraine, to Germany. France had not been able to overcome this humiliation. Thus, the Frankfurt Treaty itself was the cause of the First World War. The end of a war sowed the seeds of a future war.

(1) Economic Factors : England had established its vast empire in Asia and Africa in the 19th century. It exploited its colonies economically and became rich. Due to industrialisation and swift colonisation, Europe required huge quantity of raw material. In the last quarter of the 19th century, Germany had started the competition to procure the markets in Asia and Africa. Germany started supplying cheaper goods in comparison to England and France. The Afro-Asian markets that England and France dominated, were thus, broken up by Germany. Consequently, there was an intense economic competition between Germany and England.

(2) Militarism : Military force was necessary and important for the competition that the European nations got into, for expansion. England, France, Austria, Russia etc. had begun expanding their military power. While in countries like Japan, Italy and Germany, compulsory military training had started. Production of weapons was increased under the pretext of self-defence. Thus, militarism got an impetus and military competition added to economic competition created a serious atmosphere of war.

(3) Groupism – Secret Treaties : Groupism and secret treaties played a major role in the First World War. The world was divided into two groups before the First World War. On one side was the group of Germany, Austria, Hungary, Bulgaria and Turkey while on the other side was the group of England, France, Russia and Japan. A feeling of jealousy, enmity, mistrust, fear and hatred evolved between the groups which was an important factor of the First World War.

(4) Feeling of Fierce Nationalism : The independence of Belgium and Greece and the unification of Germany and Italy were the result of nationalism. But later, the feeling of nationalism took an extreme and narrow form in Europe. Economic jealousies, competitions and colonialism in Europe had increased so much that the national interest of each other began to clash. Leading European nations began teaching extreme and destructive nationalism to its people. Love for own nation and hatred for the other nations was encouraged. The German Kaiser William was the other originator of nationalism and colonialism. He was overambitious and believed in ‘world leadership’. He wanted to get things done according to his will with the help of his grand military power. The feeling of war spread across other nations, as in Germany, and this had resulted in the First World War.

(5) Role of Newspapers : The newspapers of the European nations aroused so much of hatred among people with their mutual, derogatory, provocative, exaggerated and false write ups by spitting venom against rival nations that the rulers of the respective nations could not even make efforts for establishing peace and harmony.

(6) Philosophy about War : The policy of “War is Welfare” took root in Europe. The German writer Trotsky published maxims like “Only the mighty deserve to live” and “War alone is the national need”. Nietzsche, the German writer, expressed war as “a sacred work”.

The Prince of Austria and his wife were assassinated by being shot at by a member of the Serbian terrorist organisation “Black Hand”. Austria blamed Serbia for the involvement in the act and gave an ultimatum to hand over the culprit to Austria within 48 hours. Serbia declared its ignorance in the matter. Without listening to anything from Serbia, Austria declared war on Serbia. The First World War had begun with this.

The First World War

In the First World War, 24 nations supported the Allied Nations and 4 nations supported the Axis Nations. Initially, Germany made noteworthy victories in Europe. It ruined the French army. It fought many submarine wars and destroyed the ships of the Allied Nations. Many soldiers and civilians died because of tanks and poisonous gases. In 1917, the Russian Revolution started, so Russia withdrew from the war. Germany was very strong at this time. It managed to drown an American steamer 'Lusitania' in which 147 American soldiers died. Consequently, America joined the Allied Nations for the war in April, 1917. With that, countries like Panama, Greece, Cuba, China and Siam joined the Allied Nations. Thus the Allied Nations became stronger. German army could not withstand the American troops. The whole position of the war changed. Bulgaria in September, 1918, Turkey and Austria in October, 1918 joined the Allied Nations. The German leader Kaizer abdicated his position and ran away. Germany surrendered to Allied Nations and signed a ceasefire treaty and the war came to an end.

Effects of First World War - Immediate effects

(1) Destruction of men and material : Approximately 6.5 crore people took part in the war, atleast 1 crore died, about 2 crore were injured and around 70 lakhs were rendered permanently handicapped. More number of people died because of starvation and other forms of killings and epidemics that broke out after the war. The total war expenditure was quite high.

(2) Social Change : During the war, since majority of the men, of all nations, were on the warfront, women shouldered the responsibility of the family and occupation. They stepped out of their homes and successfully took over the responsibility in the different professional fields. The self-confidence of their being equivalent to men, enhanced. Consequently, the demand, for women to exercise their franchise, was raised. During the war, the production of things of basic necessity had reduced. So problems like scarcity, unemployment, starvation, strikes, lockouts etc. raised its head. People suffered a lot and children's condition was pathetic.

(3) The Treaty of Versailles (June, 1919) : At the end of the First World War, the unconditional surrender of Germany in front of the Allied Nations, brought an end to the war. Then, the Allied Nations undertook the "Peace Process" in Paris, in which, some 58 commissions were formed and 145 sessions were organised. The agreement made with Germany during the Paris Peace Process, was made in the Mirror Palace at Versailles. Thus it came to be known as the Versailles Treaty. There were four provisions in the Treaty of Versailles: (1) Regional arrangement (2) Reduction in troops and disarmament (3) The arrangement of distribution of gains at the end of the war and war fine (4) Other provisions. The American President Woodrow Wilson, British Prime Minister Lord George, French President Clemenco and Italian President Orlando played an important role in this Treaty. Germany was found responsible for the war. A war fine of 6.5 billion pound was imposed on Germany. It had to give away the Ruhr region to France. Its Rhine river had to be opened for international sea route. The Rhineland region on French border was disallowed from being a fortress as well as this mineral-rich region was given away to France for 15 years. Most of the German organisations were confiscated. Alsac and Lorraine were to be returned to France. Besides this, Germany was to give to France and other Allied Nations, a large quantity of coal and iron, annually, as the benefits of war. Germany was made to sign these terms and conditions on gunpoint and forcibly because of which there was bitterness and desperation amongst Germans. Consequently, the German economy failed miserably.

(4) Long term effects : There was a feeling of revenge in signing the Treaty with the nations that were defeated in the war. Peace could not be established with the Treaty. Socialist Russia was not given a place in the League of Nations. America did not join the League of Nations. That's why, it can be said that, the reason for the Second World War was in the Peace Process of the First World War itself.

The Russian/Bolshevik Revolution (1917)

The Russian Revolution (1917) is considered as an important event in world history. The Russians had been oppressed and suppressed by the Czar (tsar) of Russia. The Russian Czars, who inherited the position, were all dictators and enjoyed uncontrolled rule over people. People did not have any rights during this period. The Czars were so cruel and pitiless on people that if anyone demanded for any rights, he was tortured, suppressed and severely punished or condemned to be sent to the bone-chilling and dead cold of Siberia. This uncontrolled and oppressive Czardom, became the reason for grief, poverty and suffering among people. The Russian farmers, labourers and peasants were not getting enough income, despite working very hard. They became very poor.

Under the leadership of Father Gapon, a large rally was taken out to the Czar's residence, Winter Palace (22nd January, 1905, Sunday). These people were unarmed, while some had the Czar's picture in hand with captions like "Long live, the little white lord of Russia" written on it. The Czar's army opened fire on these innocent people, because of which thousands of innocent people died and the snow in Petersburg, where the Czar's palace was situated, turned red with blood. This day is known as "Bloody Sunday" in history. Around this time, a large number of Russians got provoked and became restless as the weaknesses of the Czardom had become obvious when a small nation like Japan had defeated a massive nation like Russia in the Russia-Japan war (1904-05). In order to pacify the angry Russians, an announcement to call for a Duma Legislative Assembly, which had not been called for years, was made. Eventually, four such Duma were called. But before it can take steps to satisfy the citizens, it had been called off.

On 8th March, 1917, the oppressed workers of Petrograd called for a strike. The Czar sent his troops to contain this event. But the army refused to shoot these people. As a result, the revolution began. After the fall of the Czardom, the power fell into the hands of Karensky lead Menshevik group (Minority). Except for Lenin, everyone in Russia was happy with the fall of the Czar. But Lenin believed in the importance of labourers as propagated by Karl Marx, while the Menshevik group believed in the importance of the middle class. As a result, Lenin instigated the Bolsheviks against Mensheviks and in November, 1917, declared the final revolution and got the reins in his hands. This came to be known as the Socialist Bolshevik Revolution.

Thus, the 300years old Czardom came to an end and for the first time, Russia was without a Czar.

Efforts for World Peace

The League of Nations

The horrors of the World War explained the absolute necessity of world peace to the nations of the world. And for this, a need for an international organisation was felt. So it became necessary to think actively and immediately about world peace. The American President Woodrow Wilson had contributed substantially in the establishment of the League of Nations. The 14 points suggested by Woodrow Wilson were presented during the "Paris Peace Process" on 10th January, 1920. The League of Nations was formed.

Aims of the League of Nations

- (1) To maintain international peace and security.
- (2) Every nation to respect the unity and integrity of other nations.
- (3) To give up the policy of war.
- (4) To develop international relations.
- (5) To solve international disputes peacefully, through negotiation or mediation.
- (6) If any nation ignores the League of Nations or its mediations, it would be declared as a 'rebel' nation.

The League of Nations, established for world peace, did not manage to keep a control over the imperialist policies of the superpowers and in 1939, the Second World War began.

Exercise**1. Answer the following questions pointwise.**

- (1) Discuss the process of establishment of colonies in west Europe, Asia and Africa.
- (2) Explain the factors responsible for the First World War.
- (3) Mention the effects of the First World War.

2. Write short notes on.

- (1) Russian Revolution
- (2) The Events of the First World War.
- (3) Aims of the League of Nations.

3. Give reasons.

- (1) The League of Nations was established after the First World War.
- (2) 22nd January, 1905 is known as “Bloody Sunday” for Russia.

4. A. Choose the correct options from those given below.

- (1) In which Treaty was the seed for the First World War sown ?
(A) Versailles (B) Treaty of France and Britain
(C) Frankfurt (D) Treaty of Germany and Hungary
- (2) Which Treaty was signed at the end of the First World War ?
(A) Treaty of Versailles (B) Latern Treaty
(C) Secret Treaty (D) Frankfurt Treaty
- (3) Which provinces did France lose with the Frankfurt Treaty ?
(A) Denzing provinces (B) Provinces in west Russia
(C) Abscess and Lawrence provinces (D) Provinces in England




Global Trends between the two World Wars

After the First World War, people became economically poor. The immediate governments in power were unsuccessful in improving this condition. People lost trust in democracy. Dictatorship began in some countries, which became a driving force for the Second World War. Let's study the following series of events in this respect.

(1) Fascism in Italy (2) Nazism in Germany (3) Militarism in Japan (4) Global Depression 1929-32

(1) Fascism in Italy : In the First World War, Italy was on the side of the winning nations and fought for those nations. It incurred a massive expenditure of 12 billion dollars, lost lives of 6 lakh soldiers. Yet the other winning nations took over the choicest territories, ignoring Italy. Italy was angry and frustrated. Its nationalistic feeling was hurt for which Italians considered its government responsible and was more than eager to avenge this national humiliation as soon as possible. In order to salvage Italy from such a dire situation, Benito Mussolini launched the Fascist Party. He adopted "a bundle of sticks and axe" (a symbol of supremacy of the Roman emperor) as the symbol of his party. Fascism has evolved from the Italian word 'fascege' which means absolute control of the state on all things. Mussolini's maxim was 'One party, one leader'. He gave military training to his party volunteers, who wore black uniform. After coming to power, Mussolini captured Rhodes and Dodecanese islands from Turkey. He also won Albania, Abyssinia and Fume port in 1924. After these victories, Mussolini snapped all ties with the League of Nations and joined the "Rome – Berlin – Tokyo" Axis. Thus, Italy became responsible for the Second World War.

(2) Nazism in Germany : Germany had lost the First World War. It was economically ruined. Paris Peace Process had compelled Germany to sign the Treaty of Versailles. Germans were extremely angry with this unjust treaty. Adolf Hitler joined the National Socialist German Workers Party in 1919. This party came to be known as the Nazi Party. The Nazi philosophy included nationalism and socialism. After the death of the German President Hindenburg, Hitler assumed the post and established his dictatorial rule. He adopted stern and aggressive policies and led the Germans towards narrow nationalism. Germans considered Hitler as 'Fuhrer' (Saviour).

Nazi soldiers wore blue military uniform and stuck a red strip on their shoulder and wore a symbol of swastika . Hitler's authoritarian and militarist nature became obvious after coming to power. His main aim was the emergence of Germany as a major power. In the name of purification of the German race, his policies were targeted at exterminating Jews, gypsies and mentally challenged people. By the end of the Second World War, innumerable European Jews lost lives, which is known as the 'Holocaust' (genocide). Hitler's expansionism, military action against neighbouring countries and the policy of exterminating certain groups led to the Second World War and became an important reason for the same.

(3) Militarism in Japan : According to the Treaty of Versailles (1919), Japan got the benefit of the provinces of China. England and France distributed many regions of Germany between them. Japan was quite displeased with this. In the 1921-22 Washington Meet, Japan had to agree to have only 35% of the English and American naval force. Japan also had to vacate the islands of Sakhalin and Siberia. The Japanese youth was angry at this. During this time, there were elections in Japan and the parties supporting Militarism got the majority. The Military Nationalism of Japan adopted the policy of expansionism. Japan did not get a permanent place in the League of Nations. The western countries could not stop the imperialist activities of Japan. Japan captured Manchuria and established Manchukuo government (1932). Also, it captured Korea, Mongolia, Shantung and some provinces of China. It improved its relation with Germany and Italy and let

loose, its string of imperialism. After Emperor Meiji, Emperor Hirohito (1936) also encouraged these activities of Japan. Thus, Japan snapped all its ties with the League of Nations (1933).

(4) Global Depression 1929-32 : The heads of most of the European nations had the belief that, with the end of the First World War, even the post-war problems of the world will come to an end. But this proved wrong. Suddenly, a large number of shares began to be sold in the ‘Wall street’ stock market causing the stock market to crumble. This was called as the ‘Wall street crisis’ by the critics (24th October, 1929). This crisis shook the whole world and shattered the economic condition of the nations, giving birth to the Great Global Depression. Most of the nations of the world were affected by this. Even a superpower like Great Britain had to sacrifice its policy of keeping gold reserve against its currency ‘pound’. This affected the other nations of the world and international trade and industry. Prosperous nations like America also had to impose strict measures. Global trade was reduced to half. Thus, World War II started getting its outline.

World War II (1939-1945) – Factors

The seed for the World War II had been sown in the Treaty of Versailles. Paris Peace Process had displeased many nations. The events that happened after that, lead to the World War II.

So dear children, let’s study the factors responsible for World War II.

Causes of World War II

(1) Fierce Nationalism : After the First World War, fierce nationalism developed in Germany, Japan and Italy. Germans could never forget and overcome the Treaty of Versailles. Consequently, Hitler captured some provinces of Austria and Czechoslovakia, following his Nazi philosophy that Germans must get all those provinces where Germans were staying. Italy could not forget that it was ignored in the Treaty of Versailles. Under the leadership of the Fascist Party, Mussolini started this fierce nationalism and adopted imperialist policies. On the other hand, Japan too, gave in to imperialism. Thus, world peace was in danger.

(2) Groupism : Since France was always afraid of Germany after the First World War, it entered into a treaty with Belgium, Poland, Romania and Czechoslovakia.

- Italy signed treaty with Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Romania, Hungary, Greece, Turkey and Austria.
- Russia signed treaty with Germany, Turkey, Lithuania and Iran.
- Italy formed the “Rome-Berlin-Tokyo” Axis Group with the support of Germany and Japan.
- England and France formed another group with democratic values. Germany signed a non-aggression treaty with Russia.

Thus, a whole atmosphere of fear spread in the whole world. This factor, too, gave an impetus to the world war.

(3) Militarism : On one side, efforts were being made to maintain peace after the First World War, whereas, on the other side, European nations were competing for ammunition. The production of more and more weapons increased in all European nations. War weapons better than the others were being manufactured. Some nations like Russia and Germany began compulsory military training. All nations began inducting more men into Navy, Air Force and Army. In the East, Japan increased its military force. Finally, the World War II had been declared when even England and France tried to equip themselves with war weapons.

(4) Failure of the League of Nations : In order to establish peace after the First World War, the League of Nations was formed. But neither could it become a supreme organisation having sovereignty over other nations of the world, nor did it have its own army to make the nations follow its principles. Member nations were not obliged to take their problems to the League of Nations or to accept the judgement passed

by it. Many nations had moved out of the League of Nations. Initially, Russia and Germany snapped their ties with the League of Nations. Later, Italy and Japan moved out because Italy had captured Abyssinia, Japan had attacked Manchuria, Germany had snatched away some provinces of Czechoslovakia. Still, the League of Nations could do nothing. The greed for power amongst several nations became stronger in the League of Nations. It could not stop groupism. This was the biggest failure of the League of Nations.

(5) Treaty of Versailles : The Treaty of Versailles got its form in the Paris Peace Process at the end of the First World War. Since Germany was found responsible for the war, it had to pay 6.5 billion pound as war fine. Its Ruhr province was taken away. Rhine river had to be opened for international sea route. Thus, such an unfair and humiliating treaty was forcibly imposed on Germany. The German dictator Adolf Hitler called the Treaty of Versailles as ‘a piece of paper’ and announced to reject it

(6) Imperialistic Ambition of Adolf Hitler : Hitler laid the foundation of the Second World War. He had a fierce nationalist and militarist nature. That’s why, he wished the unity, stability and prosperity of Germany at any cost. The first victim of his imperialism was Austria. Along with German army, he entered Austria on 12th March, 1938.

On the very next day of the Munich Convention, Germany had captured Czechoslovakia (1st October, 1938). After that, it had captured the Mamel Port of Lithuania in March, 1939. Thus, a grand German nation was created by Hitler. His imperialist policy was the main cause of the Second World War.

(7) German attack on Poland - an immediate cause : The above mentioned causes had made the whole world to sit on a heap of ammunitions. A small spark could blow up the whole world. And this spark was German attack on the peaceful Poland (September 1, 1939; early morning). Thus, World War II had begun. Britain and France warned Germany to stop the war immediately but Germany ignored the warning. Hence, Britain and France plunged into this war. Consequently, the war spread in the entire world.

World War II – An Outline

With the commencement of the World War II, the world was again divided into two groups. On one side was the group of Allied Nations lead by England and France. On the other side was the group of Axis Nations comprising of Germany, Italy and Japan. Besides these, some other factors with war-driven mentality had entered into this. Japan attacked the American Navy at Pearl Harbour. As a result, America gave up on its neutral stand and retaliated. It joined the Allied Nations, thus making it stronger. When the war was going on in full swing, America dropped Atom bombs on the two Japanese cities, Hiroshima and Nagasaki, in order to stop Japan from moving any further. One lakh twenty four thousand Japanese citizens lost their lives and there was absolute destruction. Japan surrendered (11th August, 1945) and World War II came to an end.



3.1 Hiroshima

Effects of World War II – Immediate Effects

(1) Economic Effects : This war had caused horrendous destruction in the world. All the involved nations had incurred huge expenses. America had spent 350 billion dollars and other nations had spent more than one thousand billion dollar. Property worth the same had been destroyed too. England lost its property worth two thousand crore and about Germany, one can't imagine! The nations of the world gave more importance to the production of arms and ammunition. So there was a scarcity of things for basic needs. Production reduced, inflation increased, people were struggling for livelihood. There was scarcity of necessary goods in the market. The economic life of people was shattered. As a result, the nations of the world were pushed into an economic depression. There were major changes in the world politics and economy.

(2) Communism in China : Many nations of the world were impressed by the way Russia had made a fast progress with its communist measures, with the Bolshevik Revolution (1917). China, too, was impressed. Japan had become weak after the Second World War. Under these circumstances, its control over China had receded. Taking advantage of this, Mao-Tse- Tung established communist rule in 1949, at the end of a revolution in China.

(3) The Beginning of Cold War – long term effects : After the World War II, the world was divided into two superpowers i.e. America and Russia. During the war, both the nations were friends. But after the war, the differences of opinion between them went on increasing. Thus, the democratic America and the communist Russia became mutually opposite groups. Other small nations of the world joined these two groups according to their convenience. The war of words and the war of ideologies that both super powers initiated in order to support or oppose each other's opinion, created the atmosphere of Cold War. Many a times, the situation for the Third World War seemed to be created.

United Nations



3.2 Emblem of United Nations

At the end of the First World War, the League of Nations was formed in order to establish world peace. But the fact that the World War II occurred meant that the League of Nations was a failure. At the end of World

War II, on 24th October, 1945, the United Nations was established with the purpose of peace, security and co-existence in the world. Its headquarters was to be in New York.



3.3 United Nations Headquarters

America's efforts to establish United Nations had already begun from the time it joined the Second World War. The American President Roosevelt made four important announcements regarding freedom while giving his message to the American Congress, with the intention of human freedom, peace and security.

(1) Freedom of speech and thought (2) Freedom of religion (3) Economic freedom (4) Right to freedom from fear

Later, President Roosevelt and the British Prime Minister Churchill prepared an eight-point agreement while they were on a ship in the Atlantic Ocean, which later came to be known as the Atlantic Agreement. The agreement included matters like maintaining freedom and sovereignty of every nation, peace, security, social and economic welfare and disarmament. Then, the foreign ministers of Britain, America, Russia and China met in Moscow, for world peace, which came to be known as Moscow Declaration. In November, 1943, three super-powers held a conference in Tehran. The representatives of 50 nations prepared the agreement for the United Nations at Washington (September, 1944). On October 24, 1945, the 51 member nations declared the establishment of United Nations. India is also a part of it. Since then, 24th October is celebrated as United Nations Day all over the world. Presently, 193 Nations are members of the United Nations.



3.4 U N Flag

Organs of United Nations

The structure, adopted by the United Nations to achieve its aims, includes 6 organs :

1. General Assembly 2. Security Council 3. Economic and Social Council 4. Trusteeship Council
5. International Court of Justice 6. Secretariat

International Court of Justice is situated in Hague, Netherland. All other Councils are situated in New York, America.

Activities of the Organs United Nations

(1) General Assembly : The biggest organ of the United Nations is the General Assembly. It includes the representatives of all member nations. Every nation can send maximum five representatives to this; but during election, only one vote of each country is counted. (1) It can discuss, advise, suggest or recommend on any matter related to international relations. (2) It accepts the budget presented by the Secretary General



3.5 The General Assembly Hall

every year and allocates the expenses. (3) It attempts to find solutions to the economic problems of the nations, human rights, disarmament or other international matters. (4) Decisions are taken by $\frac{2}{3}$ majority in general matters.

(2) Security Council : This is the most important organ of the United Nations. There are five permanent members in this viz. America, Britain, France, Russia and China. Other 10 countries are not permanent members (they are elected for a term of 2 years by the General Assembly). This Council enjoys tremendous powers in order to maintain international peace and security.

It solves the problems and disputes of the nations peacefully through negotiations and mediations. When any one permanent member does not vote in support of some important international matter, it cannot take a decision on that. This power of the five permanent members is called 'Veto' or 'right to deny'. Russia has used this Veto power maximum number of times.

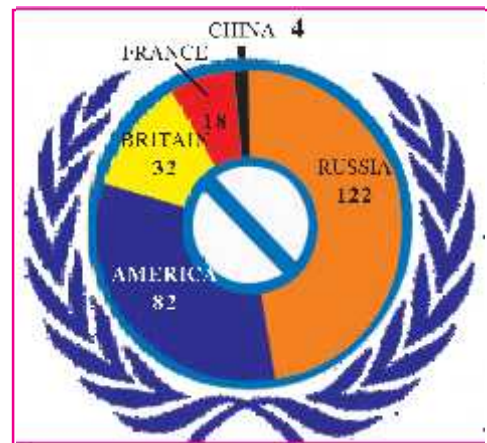


Chart of Veto power used till 2006

(3) **Economic and Social Council** : This Council is also called “ECOSOC”. The General Assembly appoints of its retiring members for 3 years. This Council tries to raise the standard of living of the nations of the world without any bias of religion, caste, region. This Council and its sub-councils work all over the world.

- **WHO (World Health Organisation)**: Works to improve the health of people of the world.
- **IMF (International Monetary Fund)**: Works to establish financial stability.



3.7 FAO



3.8 ILO



3.9 UNICEF



3.10 UNESCO

- **FAO (Food and Agriculture Organisation)** : Helps to improve agricultural production, forestry and fisheries and raise the nutrition level.
- **ILO (International Labour Organisation)**: Works to provide rights and justice to labourers of the world.
- **UNICEF (United Nations International Children’s Emergency Fund - United Nations International Children’s Fund(now))** : Undertakes child welfare activities to improve the health of the children of the world by providing nutritional food and education.
- **UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation)**: Works to improve the cooperation between nations by removing illiteracy, raising the standard of living of people through education, providing justice, education, science and cultural resources.

Besides these, there are sub-councils and regional councils which undertake various activities.

(4) **Trusteeship Council** : There are five permanent member nations in this Council. The representatives selected by the General Assembly are included here. It oversees matters pertaining to nations that have not acquired independence and are under some previous mandate, also nations defeated in the Second World War as well as its social, economic, political development.

(5) **International Court of Justice** : Its headquarter is in the city of Hague, Netherland. There are 15 judges in it, who are appointed for 9 years. It solves disputes between nations, gives verdict on international disputes presented before it and gives legal advice.

(6) **Secretariat** : The office of the Secretary General of the United Nations is called the Secretariat. The General Assembly appoints the Secretary General for five years. Secretaries, administrators, assistants, translators and experts are also appointed to help the Secretary General. The Secretariat is situated in New York. The United Nations has constantly been making efforts to establish world peace, world unity and to achieve the dream of universal brotherhood.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions pointwise.

- (1) Which circumstances caused the Great Depression (1929-32) ?
- (2) Discuss the factors responsible that caused the World War II ?
- (3) Write the effects of World War II.

2. Answer the following questions briefly :

- (1) Why was the United Nations established ?
- (2) Explain what the Economic and Social Council, as an organ of the UN, means ?

3. Write short note :

- (1) The General Assembly of the UN (2) The Security Council of the UN.

4. Answer in one sentence :

- (1) Which Treaty was responsible for the World War II ?
- (2) Who was the German dictator ?
- (3) Name the Italian dictator.
- (4) Give the immediate reason of the World War II.
- (5) Where is the UN headquarter situated ?
- (6) What is Cold War ?

5. Choose the correct options from those given below :

- (1) Who started Nazism in Germany ?
 (A) Hitler (B) Mussolini (C) Lenin (D) None of them
- (2) Who takes care of improving the health of the people of the world ?
 (A) WHO (B) IMF (C) FAO (D) ILO
- (3) **Choose the correct option from those given below.**
 (A) Fascism began in Germany.
 (B) Mussolini was the German leader.
 (C) The symbol of the Nazi Party was “a bundle of sticks and axe”
 (D) Mussolini established Fascism in Italy.

Teacher- Student Activity

- In the outlined map of world, mark all the nations that were a part of World War II and enlist them.
- Prepare a chart of World Organisations and their emblems.
- Prepare the list of UN Secretary Generals.

Introduction

During their stay in India, Britishers became familiar with the political condition of India. The British East India Company took advantage of the political disputes or internal weaknesses of India and from 1757 A.D., after creeping in to Bengal, to the revolt of 1857 A.D., it established its supremacy over India in its 100 years of rule. In order to maintain this supremacy, the English, gradually, developed a strong administrative structure in the country. Through this administrative structure, common laws, common administration and a legal system according to the British system, came into existence. Yet, the English residing in India established such laws and administration that England would get more benefits. At the cost of India, they made England prosperous and exploited India the most.

The Great National Uprising of 1857

Some of the factors that caused the uprising of 1857 were political dissatisfaction, economic exploitation, social and religious factors, military factor and immediate reasons like induction of the enfield Rifle in the army. Mangal Pandey was the first martyr of the uprising. Several revolutionaries like Nana Saheb, Tatya, Tope, Raja Kuwarsinh, Rani Laxmibai, Bahadur Shah Zafar etc. took part in it. The uprising of 1857 produced many effects among which are the end of the Company Rule in India and the rule of the British Crown (ruled by Queen Victoria), change in administrative, military, social, religious policies. The reasons responsible for the failure of the 1857 uprising are the beginning of the uprising before the planned time, lack of central leadership, insufficient & unsophisticated weapons, importance of self-centered interests than nationalism amongst revolutionaries, lack of suitable and organised leadership etc. You've already studied these in detail in the previous class.

Boycott and Indigenous Movements

Boycott and indigenous movement along with Bangabandh Movement (1905) was one of the important events of the Indian national movements. Because of the 'divide and rule' policy as a result of the Britishers' Machiavellian Policies, boycott and indigenous movement got an impetus.

Bengal was a big province at the time of British rule, which included the present day Bengal, Bihar and Odisha. Compared to other states, Bengal was the central point of national awakening. The impetus and thought for the national movement came from Bengal. In the 1857 revolt, Hindus and Muslims had collectively fought the English. That's why, through the English strategy of 'divide and rule', they encouraged communalism & caused division among people.

Viceroy Curzon (1899-1905) divided the vast Bengal Province into East Bengal and West Bengal, in the name of bringing about administrative efficiency.

There was a strong opposition to the division of Bengal. When Bengal was divided on 16th October, 1905, the whole Bengal observed the day as 'National Mourning Day'. The same day, an announcement, about boycotting all foreign goods and encouragement to use indigenous goods, was made. Not merely Bengalis, but the other Indians also began to believe that this division had been done to curtail the vociferous feeling of nationalism that was catching up in India. That day, Hindus and Muslims tied rakhis to each other in the entire Bengal to express their unity. This movement had three major characteristics (1) adopt indigenous products (Swadeshi) (2) boycott foreign goods (3) adopt national education.

India benefitted a lot due to this Swadeshi Movement, while the English industry was badly affected due to the boycott of foreign goods. The cloth coming from Manchester, stopped. Sugar, shoes, cigarettes, tobacco etc imported from England also reduced and the sale of cloth made in India, increased. Factories for making indigenous goods were started. The effect of the Movement was felt in other provinces of India like Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Mumbai, Madras etc. besides Bengal. The echo of the

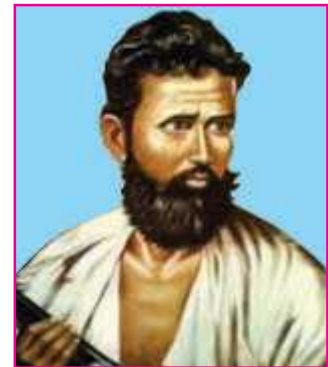
Swadeshi Movement was felt in Gujarat too. The echo of the movement was also felt strongly in the British Parliament and just within six years (1911), the division of Bengal was scrapped after a rethinking by the Parliament. This was a memorable victory by the Indians, a victory of the relentless united efforts. This was a noteworthy victory of the new awakening against the English rule.

Muslim League (1906)

By adopting the 'divide and rule' policy, the English wanted to create a conflict between Hindus and Muslims. The then viceroy Lord Minto and the Indian Vizier (Diwan/Vazir) Morley together planned to crush the Indian nationalism. When the national fight became stronger, the English began to favour the upper class Muslims. The English became successful in convincing a group of Muslims that they must form a Muslim organization to demand for separate voting rights and separate voting centres. As a result, Muslim League was formed (1906). Religious head of the Muslims Agakhan, Nawab of Dhaka Salimullah Khan, Viceroy Minto and his personal minister Dunlop Smith had played an important role in the establishment of this organisation. In order to stop the Muslims from attending the annual conference of the Congress, the annual conference of the Muslim League was arranged on the same day as that of the Congress. Thus, the demand for separate representation is not the brain child of the Muslims but that of the English policy. Minto started the policy of taking Muslims as associates. That's why, many writers consider Minto as the father of Muslim communalism. A historian also goes to the extent of saying that, 'the real creator of Pakistan was not Mohamadali Jinnah or Rahmatulla, but Lord Minto'. Since then only, the conflict between Hindus and Muslims increased and resulted in the division of India !

Birth And Development of Extreme Revolutionary Movement

The Revolutionary activity in India was started by Vasudev Balwant Phadke. Revolutionaries like Damodar Chaphekar, and Balkrishna Chaphekar brothers, Vir Savarkar, Baarindranath Ghosh, Khudiram Bose, Praful Chaki, Ramprasad 'Bismil', Ashfaqullah Khan, Chandrashekhar 'Azad' Bhagatsingh, Shivram Rajguru, Sukhdev, Batukeshwar Dutt, Roshansingh etc carried on the torch of nationalism. Youth trained in making and using weapons were a constant threat for the English government.



Vasudev Balwant Phadke

Fierce revolutionary movements began in India and spread in the other countries as well. The circumstances in its background were the cancellation of the partition of Bengal, the partition of two groups i.e. "Jahal" (radicals) and 'Maval' (moderates) at the Congress Conference in Surat (1907), and the terrific opposition to practice of Congress of making only resolutions and requests. Lal-Bal-Pal trio adopted the radical attitude which brought new life in the young Indian activists. The lethargic policies of the Indian National Congress got a solid new turn.



Khudiram Bose



Ramprasad 'Bismil'



Ashfaqullah Khan



Chandra Shekhar
'Azad'

**Sardar Bhagat Singh****Shivram Rajguru****Sukhdev Thapar****Roshan Singh**

Lokmanya Bal Gangadhar Tilak declared firmly, 'Freedom' is my birthright and I will achieve it anyhow'. This became the maxim for the revolutionary freedom fighters.

At that time, a group of Indian youth undertook activities to seek freedom from foreign rule. These extreme revolutionaries were more than happy to sacrifice their lives for the motherland. They could give up their lives or take lives in order to attain freedom.

Revolutionary activities spread in Maharashtra, Bengal, Punjab, Bihar, Orissa, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madras province, Uttarpradesh and central India. Among these activities were some like 'Mitramela Society', 'Abhinav Bharat Samaj', 'Anushilan Samiti', 'Anjuman-e-Muhillane Vatan', Indian Patriots Association (later 'Bharatmata') etc. and thus gave impetus to revolutionary activities.

**Balgangadhar Tilak**

In the first stage, newspapers and magazines like 'Yugantar', 'Navshakti' and 'Vandematram', 'Kesari' 'Maratha' gave constant strength to the activities. About 34 revolutionaries were prosecuted in the Alipur massacre. Several revolutionaries were arrested in 'Howrah massacre' and 'Dhaka massacre'. Attempt to kill Lord Hardinge by throwing a bomb; dropping bomb on Viceroy Minto on November 13, 1909 outside Raipur darwaja in Ahmedabad can all be given as example of these.

In the second stage (1920-42), events like 'Kakori Loot Case', 'Lahore massacre' and dropping of bomb on Central Parliament (Delhi) took place. You have already studied about the other revolutionaries engaged in all these activities

Fierce Revolutionary Movement in Gujarat

Sri Aurobindo Ghosh was the pioneer of armed revolution in Gujarat. But he remained behind the curtain. His brother Baarindrakumar Ghosh always remained in the forefront (1902). He arrived in Gujarat and moved towards the southern part. Here, he met Shri Chotubhai and Shri Ambubhai Purani – very able companions. Sakaria Swami met him on the banks of Narmada. This Swami was associated with Queen of Jhansi at the time of the revolt of 1857. Baarindrakumar involved some of the middle class youth from Vadodara, Charotar region (Kheda) Ahmedabad, Mehsana in the revolution. In this relation, the buggy of Viceroy Minto was bombed outside at Raipur Darwaja in Ahmedabad.

Shri Aurobindo Ghosh described the scheme for revolution in his book named 'Bhavani Mandir'. It was also translated into Gujarati and published in the journal 'Dakshina' Besides this, booklets with titles like 'Deshi Vanaspati Davao', 'Nahavana Sabu Banavvani Reet', 'Kasrat', 'Gulab no Kisso', 'Kayada no Sangrah' etc were published in order to spread the thoughts of revolution, so that Britishers won't understand ! These

booklets contained methods of preparing bombs. 'Gangnath Vidyalay' was established near Chandod – Karnali, where secret revolutionary activities were carried out. Many Gujarati youth joined these revolutionary activities against whom stern action was taken by the government. But the fight did not stop and finally government realised that suppression would not help to rule over India.

Revolutionary Movement in Foreign Countries

The revolutionary movement began in foreign countries also for giving freedom to India from the British.

The revolutionary activities that began in India spread to different countries like England, Canada, America, Germany, France, Myanmar (Burma), Malaya, Singapore, Afghanistan, Russia.

The active revolutionary who took part in revolutionary activities in foreign countries are :

Shyamji Krishna Verma, Madanlal Dhingra, Vir Savarkar, Lala Hardayal, Udham Singh, Raja Mahendra Pratap, Madam Bhikhaiji Cama, Sardarsingh Rana, Maulana Abdulla, Maulana Basir, Champak Raman Pillai, Dr. Mathursinh "Khudabaksh" were associated with their activities.

The revolutionary activities in the foreign countries gave impetus to the revolutionary activities in India. Pistols were being secretly sent to India from England along with the beddings of cooks. Madanlal Dhingra killed William Wylie who used to criticize the revolutionaries. In 1907, the 'Indian Independence League' was established in California, America, which was later named as 'Gadar Party' by Lala Hardayal. A weekly named 'Gadar' was published in four languages. Taraknath Das and Kartarsingh too joined this activity. Champak Raman Pillai formed the 'Hind Rastriya Swaymsevak Dal' in Germany. Plan was made to attack India by making Iraq as the headquarter (1907). In the 'International Socialist Conference' held in Stuttgart, Germany, the national flag prepared by Madam Cama was hoisted for the first time. Raja Mahendra Pratap formed the Provisional Independent Government under 'Rashtra Pramukh' in Afghanistan in which Barkatulla, Abidulla, Maulana Bashir, Shamshersingh, Dr. Mathursingh etc. also joined. This govt. made efforts to get help from Russia, Iran, Turkey etc. They also met the Turkish chief Anwar Pasha and the Governor. The conspiracy 'Galibnama' written on 'reshmi rumal' (Silk handkerchief) asking all Muslims to unite and fight against Christians, was exposed ! Raja Mahendra Pratap sent a golden strip, with his signature to the Russian Czar, in which he had requested the Czar to sever all ties with England. Russian revolutionary Trotsky had pledged all his support to the Indian revolutionaries. Sohanlal Pathak in Burma and Parmanand in Singapore carried on revolutionary activities. In addition to this, the Kamagatamaru and Toshamaru steamer events provided inspiration to the Indian revolutionaries staying abroad to fight against the British.

The Indian youth, in the age group of 18 - 24 years were mainly involved in the radical freedom movement. They used to carry out any kind of thrilling acts as they did not fear death. When caught, they readily



Vir Savarkar



Madanlal Dhingra and Udham Singh



Shyamji Krishna Verma



Madam Cama

embraced death shouting slogans like 'Inquilab Zindabad' and 'Vande Mataram' for the purpose of freedom of their motherland. Their sacrifices would provide inspiration to the young generation for ages.

Morley – Minto Reforms (1909)

The English adopted the policy of 'Divide and Rule' to create enmity between Hindus and Muslims (1906). Under the leadership of Agakhan, Muslim delegation met Viceroy Minto. Morley was the Indian Vizier at that time (1909). These reforms are known as Morley-Minto reforms.

Arrival of Gandhiji to India (1915)

Gandhiji returned to India (1915) after successfully fighting against racism in South Africa with satyagrah. His political mentor (guru) was Gopalkrishna Gokhle and Spiritual mentor was Shrimad Rajchandra from whom he got inspiration. Gandhiji travelled across India and observed the life of Indians. He considered exploitation as the root of poverty in India and made plans to abolish British rule in India.

Rowlatt Act. (1919)

The British government formed the Rowlatt Act under the Chairmanship of Rowlatt, the Minister of Law (1919).

This act was framed with the purpose of suppressing revolutionaries and nationalists. This Act came to be known as 'Black Act' because it was meant to suppress individual freedom and freedom of speech.

According to this Act, any suspicious person could be arrested and jailed, without conducting any trial against him. That's why Gandhiji called it 'Black Act' and Motilal Nehru considered it as 'snatching away, of argument, appeal and advocacy'.

The British government gained immense power, under this Act, to suppress any kind of opposition. So leaders and people at large, expressed their opposition. Meetings, rallies, shows and strikes were organised against it. Gandhiji was arrested in Delhi. When Dr. Satyapal and Dr. Kitchlu were arrested in Punjab, the agitation became severe. The government vehemently tried to suppress all opposition.

Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (13th March 1919)

When popular leaders like Dr. Satyapal and Dr. Kitchlu were arrested in Amritsar, Punjab, a public gathering was organised in the Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar, on the day, of Baisakhi, to oppose the arrest.

General Odonil Dyer reached there with his troops and without any warning, opened fire on innocent people



4.1 Jallianwala Bagh Massacre

from the machine gun. There were high walls on four sides of the Bagh. In the middle, was an unused well and the only way out being narrow, a number of people lost their lives in the firing. According to the government report, 379 people died and 1200 injured. As per the committee appointed by the congress, 1000 people had



4.2 Jallianwala Bagh Memorial

died in the firing. 'Hunter Commission', investigating the case on behalf of the British Government, defended General Dyer. The commission forgave Dyer considering it as 'an innocent mistake that happened unknowingly'. On the other hand, when Dyer returned to England, he was honoured with a sword and 2000 pounds ! Indians got a terrible shock because of this. After this inhuman act, Gandhiji's faith towards the British was completely lost. This event played an important role in uniting the whole nation. This tragedy became the ground for the future Non Co-Operation movement.

Khilafat Movement

During the First World War, Turkey joined the German side. So when England won, the treaty that was made, had many firm and unjust terms and conditions for the losing side. The sultan of Turkey, at that time, was a Khalifa - Head of Muslims. The Movement in India, to oppose the strict terms imposed on Turkey and the sultan, came to be known as Khilafat Movement. Ali brothers - Maulana Shaukatali and Maulana Mohammad Ali - were the chief leaders of the Movement. Gandhiji requested the congress to support the Movement, Keeping Hindu-Muslim unity in mind. The Movement became severe with the Congress support.

Non Co-operation Movement (1920-22)

The Nagpur Conference gave the approval to Non-Co-operation Movement (December, 1920). Now, the Congress made a strong demand for independence of India (Swarajya) instead of self-government (Swashasan) under the rule of the British Empire.

Constructive Aspect

In the positive aspect of the movement was Hindu-Muslim unity to be strengthened, insistence



4.3 Common people in Non-Co-operation Movement

on using 'Swadeshi' articles, revival of spinning wheels in every house, collection of one crore rupees for 'Tilak Swarajya Fund', abolition of untouchability, national education, prohibition etc.

Negative Aspect

The negative aspects consisted of giving up of government jobs, government school-colleges, boycott legislatures, resign from government courts, local self-government, boycott foreign cloth and other articles, government functions, titles etc.

Programmes for Non Co-operation Movement

In the beginning of the Movement, Mahatma Gandhi and Rabindranath Tagore surrendered their titles 'Kaiser-e-hind' and 'Knighthood honour' respectively. Other leaders of the nation also gave up their titles and positions. Students left English schools and colleges. At various places, foreign clothes were set on fire. When Duke of Kainatt came to India, he was boycotted (1921, November). The ceremony of honouring Prince of Wales was boycotted. Such incidents created considerable national excitement. On the other hand, national schools and colleges were established, like Kashi, Bihar, Jamia-Milia, Gujarat etc Vidyapiths. Due to the vigorous propaganda for Swadeshi goods, the import of cloth, footwear, luxurious items from England reduced drastically. This reaction rattled the British Parliament. The government was shocked by this kind of huge economic loss to England.

More than one crore rupees was collected in the Tilak Fund. On many occasions, the Hindu-Muslim emerged predominantly. The 'Mopla Revolt' (Malabar) between Hindu landlords and Muslim peasants deserves criticism and it was suppressed by the British army.

The government adopted the policy of suppression. Uncontrolled lathicharge, firing, collective arrests and inhuman torture was meted out. Unsuccessful attempts to break Hindu-Muslim unity were made.

The Chauri-Chaura Incident and Withdrawal of the Movement

People took out a rally in the Chauri-Chaura Village in Gorakhpur, Uttarpradesh. The police opened fire on the people. But when they ran short of bullets, people attacked the police station and set on fire in which 21 policemen died. On receiving this horrible news, Gandhiji said, 'I have committed a Himalayan blunder by giving the tool of Satyagraha in the hands of people who do not understand the value of non-violence'. He suspended the Movement immediately.

Importance of Non-Co-operation and its effects

This Movement did not achieve its desired aims, but through its negative and constructive aspects, managed to generate in people, awareness of their rights. A negative atmosphere, against the government, was created. There was a strong feeling of opposition against injustice. There was a political awareness among all the classes of India. The faith in independence became stronger. The fear of lathi, punishment and imprisonment was removed. The youth and women too came forward to serve their nation and Congress became an organisation of the people. schools giving national education began. Hindi started getting more importance than English. The Movement that was limited to cities and towns and intellectuals, spread to the people and villages.

Swarajya Party

With the purpose of retaining the national awareness among people, Chittaranjan Das Munshi and Motilal Nehru formed the Swarajya Party after the withdrawal of the Non-Co-operation Movement. Their purpose was to enter the legislative assemblies and oppose the unfair policies of the government. The leaders of the Swarajya Party also adopted the constructive activities of Gandhiji like abolition of untouchability, Hindu-Muslim unity, revival of spinning wheel, liquor prohibition etc.

Swarajya Party contested the election of the legislatures held in November, 1923 and the candidates of the Swarajya Party were elected in the central legislature as well as the Provincial Legislature and got clear majority. It did not get the majority in Bengal but emerged as a strong party. Motilal Nehru was elected into the central Legislature as the party leader and Chittaranjan Das was elected in the Bengal Province.

Swarajya Party disapproved the government budgets and proposals and resented the unjust policies of the government. It compelled the government to consider the problems of the people. Due to the working of the Swarajya Party only, government had to appoint the Simon Commission two years earlier.

The Swarajya Party functioned in a disciplined manner and established high parliamentary practices. It proved to the British government that Indians can rule constitutionally and democratically. The educated class of India was thus attracted to the Swarajya Party. National awareness re-emerged in the people. The party played a crucial role in bringing the achievement of independence very near. All this indicates the importance of the Party.

With the death of Chittaranjan Das in June, 1925, the Swarajya Party became weak. Some members began supporting the government while others established a new party named the National Party. Thus, the prestige of the Swarajya Party, reduced. In the 1926 election, all its members lost terribly except in Madras Province. Bipinchandra Pal and Surendranath Bannerji even criticized the Party strongly.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions pointwise :

- (1) Discuss the nature and effects of boycott agitation and national movements.
- (2) Growth and development of fierce revolutionary movements – Discuss.
- (3) Explain the programmes, event and effects of Non-Co-operation Movement.

2. Write Short notes :

- (1) Revolutionary movements in foreign countries.
- (2) Rowlatt Act.
- (3) Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
- (4) Swarajya Party

3. Answer the following questions :

- (1) Who divided Bengal ? When and why ?
- (2) Explain the fierce revolutionary movements in Gujarat.
- (3) Why did Gandhiji call Rowlatt Act as 'Black law' ?
- (4) Why was the Non-Co-operation Movement suspended ?
- (5) Why did the prestige of the Swarajya Party decline ?

4. Choose the correct options from those given below :

- (1) By what name is the day of partition of Bengal known as ?
 (A) National Mourning Day (B) Bangbhang Day
 (C) Independence Day (D) None of the above
- (2) Which reform gave Muslims, communal electoral constituencies ?
 (A) Mont–Ferd (B) Ilbert Bill
 (C) August offer (D) Morley–Minto
- (3) Who prepared the stage for armed revolution in Gujarat for the first time ?
 (A) Baarindranath Ghosh (B) Chotubhai Purani
 (C) Ambubhai Purani (D) Arvind Ghosh
- (4) Who hoisted the Indian national flag in the foreign land for the first time ?
 (A) Shyamji Krishna Varma (B) Rana Sardarsingh
 (C) Madam Bhikaiji Cama (D) Madanlal Dhingra

Activity

- Collect the photographs of as many leaders mentioned in the lesson as possible.
- Find out booklets on the life of revolutionaries of the Revolt of 1857.
- Prepare a map indicating the main centres of the 1857 Revolt.



The period from 1920 to 1947 is considered as Gandhian age and the Gandhian movements of struggle for Independence. This second stage of national movement of India is the struggle for having Constitutional rights, moreover, it is the struggle for the freedom of India too. This struggle passed through a stream of events and there was a uniform effect of it. So we shall observe the effects in this chapter.

Simon Commission (1942)

Montford(Montague Chelmsford 1919) amendment declared that a commission should be sent to India after ten years to examine the effects and operations of the constitutional reforms and to suggest more reforms for India but two years later government appointed Simon commission. The commission consisted of Sir John Simon and seven other members. All of them were members of the British Parliament. There was not a single Indian as a member. Indians recommended inclusion of Indian members in the commission so as to understand the problems and pains of Indian society but Britishers rejected this recommendation. So, the Indians decided to oppose it. Simon Commission was greeted with strikes, assembly, processions, loud slogans of 'Simon, Go Back' and unfurling of black flags and apparel. The British government suppressed the movement mercilessly. The Assistant Police Superintendent ordered lathi charge on Lalaji's procession. Lala Lajpatrai was injured seriously while taking the lead of the procession in Lahore. Few months later he passed away. The news of Lalaji's death instigated Veer Bhagat Singh, Sukdev and Rajguru, therefore they killed Saunders.

Nehru Committee

With the opposition of Simon Commission, Hindi Vazeer Burkenhead presented a draft of the Constitution as in Simon Commission in which, it stated that the Indian leaders of all parties formulate appropriate constitution which the British government will further think upon. By understanding the challenges of this report, National General Assembly President drafted Nehru committee report. This report which was given is known as Nehru Report which states the Dominion Status, Independent Judiciary, Fundamental Rights, and Adult Suffrage. Eventually the British government rejected the recommendations made in this report.



Motilal Nehru



Jawaharlal Nehru

Demand for Complete Independence, 1929

During this time National Assembly members Jawaharlal Nehru, Subhash Chandra Bose were active national leaders. They were the propagators of Complete Independence. Youth of India were not happy with the Dominion Status. On the banks of the river Raavi in Lahore, under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru, National General Assembly passed a resolution of Complete Independence. After that, on 26th January, 1930, the members took the Oath of Complete Independence. Since then, January 26th has become memorable for all of us. Independent India has made the Republic Day memorable by implementing the Constitution of India on this day.



Dandi Yatra

away from struggle, the one who runs by seeing the struggle is not brave.” Gandhiji, along with his supporters started the Dandi march. This march was 370 kms which included Aslali, Bareja, Nadiad, Anand, Boriavi, Ras, Jambusar, Bharuch, Surat, Navsari as well as small and large regions. During Dandi March in these regions, people were explained the reason for Civil Disobedience Movement and breaking the Salt Law. As Dandi March passed through these small and large towns, people used to clean the village roads, decorate their houses with torans and showed conscience for this satyagraha. Dandi Yatra had a wonderful effect in creating astonishing faith, unity and consciousness among people. All of the nation was having a wave of satyagrah. Gandhiji along with his colleagues and supporters reached Dandi after 24 days of march (5th April, 1930). On early morning of April 6th, Gandhiji broke the Salt



showing Gandhiji breaking the Salt Law

Dandi Yatra : (From March 12 to April 6, 1930)

As a part of Civil Disobedience Movement, Gandhiji decided to go to Dandi village by its sea-coast to break the Salt Law. On the of 11th March evening, in the assembly of thousands of people, the message of Satyagrah was sent. Even if people got arrested, with firm determination of non-violence, struggle against government continued. On 12th March, 1930, under his leadership, Gandhiji commenced 'Dandi Yatra' with his supporters from Harijan Ashram (Now Gandhi Ashram) singing the hymn 'Vaishnav jan to tene re kahiye je, peed parayi jaane re'. Gandhiji said, In Dandi yatra (29th March, 1930) “ I shall **die the death of crow and dog, but I will not return to this Ashram without attaining Poorna Swaraj**”. “Brave never run



Route of Dandi March

Law by picking a handful of salt from the sea-coast. In a loud voice Gandhiji stated, “I have broken the Salt law” and while addressing the people gathered there, he uttered, “I, by this event, am applying salt to the foundation of building in the form of British Empire.” Shri Mahadevbhai Desai has compared this event as ‘Mahabhiniskraman’ – the great renunciation. Journalists, Photographers, Writers, Historians of India and across the world visited and published report about what they witnessed, in their own newspapers and booklets. In this way, the Dandi Yatra which started from Sabarmati Ashram on 12th March, was nationally acclaimed, achieved its physical completion, but it started applying salt to the foundation of building in the form of British Empire. Civil Disobedience Movement generated new national consciousness among people of India. The British Police beat them mercilessly. Lathicharge, arrest, shooting and oppression on women and children continued but agitation did not decrease.

During Dandi March, numerous constructive programmes like boycott of foreign clothes, prohibition of liquor, removing untouchability, Hindu-Muslim unity and oath to do social services etc were held.

Dandi Yatra and Breaking of Salt Law brought not only nationwide consciousness but it brought fame in aspects of non-violence struggle and movements worldwide. Processions, programmes and assemblies were conducted for boycotting foreign goods, prohibition of foreign liquor and picketing on liquor making, not giving revenue tax, satyagrah for removal of untouchability. To weaken these agitations and struggles, the government started lathicharge, imprisonment and other atrocities. People reacted by destroying of railway-station, post-office, police-station and other government buildings. Incidents like suppression of agitation under the leadership of Abdul Gafar Khan 'Frontier Gandhi' at Vadala, Bombay, struggle against foreign liquor under the leadership of Kasturba Gandhi in Bombay, Gharsana in Surat and in Viramgam during the Salt Law agitation, renunciation of government services as well as removal of children from government schools were the major highlights of these movements.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact, Round Table Conference and Moratorium of Satyagrah

Gandhiji was called upon by the Britishers for the Round Table Conference related to the Constitutional structure and reforms. First Round Table Conference was held but with the absence of congress leaders it was futile. To reconcile with congress, a pact between Gandhiji and Irwin was made which was known as Gandhi-Irwin Pact (March 1931) in which permission of free collection or manufacture of salt by persons near the sea-coast and permission of peaceful picketing were the main points. In the second Round Table Conference Gandhiji was the only representative from congress and Britishers had discriminating points for various religious committees to which Gandhiji was deeply disappointed and therefore the Conference was dissolved.

Quit India Movement

Keeping in mind the World War situation, the Congress Working Committee decided to end the Individual Satyagrah. (January, 1942)

The British Government attempted to deceive people of India by Cripps Mission. So Indians were angry and dejected. Therefore, people of India no longer had faith in the British rulers. They assumed that the British do not wish to quit India. Gandhiji advised the people to come out of despair and be prepared to give a new and last fight.

On August 9th, 1942 resolution of 'Quit India Movement' was passed in the working committee of Congress held at Mumbai. On the second day of the resolution, Gandhiji, Vallabhbhai Patel, Jawaharlal Nehru, Maulana Azad and other eminent congress leaders were arrested. Newspapers were banned. Regional and district level congress leaders were arrested simultaneously. Arrest of Gandhiji and other leaders resulted in nationwide strike and to this Gandhiji said "This is the last fight in my life and therefore people of India should make all attempt to achieve independence." He gave the slogan "Do or Die."

Strikes during Quit India Movement

The rural and urban regions of the country including workers, farmers, youth, students, teachers, businessmen and women were in the forefront of this movement. Workers went on strike in factories. Iron factories in Jamshedpur and Cotton mills at Madras too were on strike. 1 lakh mill workers of 75 cotton mill industries in Ahmedabad went on peaceful strike for 105 days. Colleges and schools observed strike. For nearly 3 and half months markets in Ahmedabad were closed.

Harmful activities during Quit India Movement

Anger against British Government was being expressed from every nook and corner of the country. Suppression against peaceful people by the Britishers led to a violent situation as people not only ransacked the post offices, telegram departments, police stations, railway stations, government buildings, school and college buildings, railway lanes, pools, bridges and roads but looted the assets and set on fire the government properties. In this railway incurred the heaviest losses. In many of the areas people used bombs.

Failure of the Government in crushing the struggle

The Government tried to suppress the movement with hard hand. The struggle started from a small end to a large extent by ransacking government system. More than 70,000 people were imprisoned, 538 gunshots were fired, 1028 people lost their lives, 3200 people were injured. Students were injured in gunshots especially in Ahmedabad and Patna. A unique political consciousness was created among the people. This movement gave clear warning to the British Government and a message to the world at large that India cannot be enslaved any more. The struggle really signalled by the people of India, to Britishers, to Quit India. The people of India now wanted full independence. The amendment for Dominion Status was almost invisible by this struggle. After a struggle of 5 years India achieved independence.

Azad Hind Fauj and Subhash Chandra Bose

Subhash Chandra Bose was born in Cuttack in Orissa state (23rd January, 1897). His father Rai Bhadur Janakinath Bose was a government lawyer in British judiciary. His mother Parvatidevi was a philanthropist. Prediction was that, this Bengali lad will become sincere servant of Britishers. But he went on to become a staunch freedom fighter against British Empire. After passing examination with good marks from Calcutta's Presidency College, he went to England for further studies. He passed the very difficult ICS (Indian Civil Service) examination at fourth number, and returned to Calcutta. Seeds of revolution were planted in his mind due to the insulting attitude and pride of the British professors at the Presidency College towards the Indians. He was very much interested in the Indian Independence struggle. He became an active member of National Assembly. He joined the Swarajya Party in 1923. He soon became very popular leader among youths. He was in the top in Civil Disobedience Movement and therefore jailed many times. At the young age of forty-one he was elected as president of Congress convention at Haripura (Surat) and showcased his ability.

He left the Congress as difference of opinion with Gandhiji had increased and he established a party, the Forward Bloc. To awaken plebiscite against Britishers he travelled most of the regions of India. He was arrested under Indian Defence Code and imprisoned. During imprisonment, he was ill-treated. He was imprisoned at his place of residence as his health was deteriorating since he was fasting 'Unto the Death'. He



Gandhiji & Subhash Chandra Bose

He travelled in the disguise of Pathan from Calcutta via Peshawar, Kabul, Iran and Russia, later on he reached Berlin, Germany (28th March, 1942). Indians living in Germany gave him warm welcome. He urged the people of India through Berlin radio to fight against British Empire. He also met Hitler in Germany and discussed in detail about the independence of India. He then went to Rome and Paris to establish military unit for the Independence of India and recruited 3000 thousand Indians. Rasbihari Bose, a revolutionary living in Japan, chaired all the organization and established Indian Independence League. To make India free, Azad Hind Fauj was set up. A presence of 100 Indian delegates from Malaya, Japan, Sumatra, Java, Hong Kong, Borneo, Andaman, Burma, (Brahmdesh; now Myanmar) were in the organisation. And in that

Mohan Singh, a war prisoner arrested by Japan, was also present. Moreover RasBihari Bose voluntarily retired as head of INA.

Azad Hind Fauj and Indian Independence League

After breaking the tight British security, Subhash Chandra Bose cleverly reached Japan from Berlin in a submarine in 1943. Moreover Rasbihari Bose of Indian Independence League invited Subhash Chandra Bose to be the head of this League. Japan would provide every kind of help for the Indian Freedom. It was promised that as Japanese army advances towards India capturing Indian provinces, provisional governments would be formed and Japan would give them recognition.

On July 2, 1943, Subhash Chandra Bose went to Singapore from Japan and there he was elected as the President of Indian Independence League on July 4, 1943. Moreover RasBihari Bose voluntarily retired as head of Indian National Army (Azad Hind Fauj) and appointed Subhash Chandra Bose as head of INA. Indians, residing there, got a proper and able leader for freeing their motherland. Since then Subhash Chandra Bose was called 'Netaji'. In his speeches and on radio, he gave slogans: 'Chalo Delhi' (Let's march to Delhi) and "Tum Muje khoondo, Mein tumhe Azadi doonga" (Give me blood, I will give you freedom). With his skillful guidance, he formed the parallel government. He tried to convince and urged the Indians residing in south-east Asia to sacrifice everything for the struggle of Independence of India.

Establishment of Provisional Government by Subhash Chandra Bose

Subhash Chandra Bose formed provisional Indian government and he became its Prime Minister. He allotted other departments to his companions and formed a cabinet. This government was recognised by Japan, Germany, Italy, nationalised China and Burma. This government recognized Hindi as a national Language and tri-colour as national Flag. It was decided to have income by assisting Japan, independent role and by property tax. Netaji visited Andaman and Nicobar islands and named it as 'Shaheed' (Martyr) and 'Swarjya' (Independence)

Last step and Martyrdom of Subhasbabu

In May, 1944, under the leadership of Netaji, his military units captured Rangoon, Prom, Kohima (presently the capital of Nagaland). Then it marched towards Imphal (now capital of Manipur). But after the dropping of two atom bombs at Nagasaki and Hiroshima in Japan, the financial assistance to the provisional government stopped. British aircrafts started warfare against Azad Hind Fauj and so the condition became critical. On (August 18, 1945) he started from Taipei airport of Formosa for Tokyo (Japan). But his plane caught fire and he got serious burns and while undergoing treatment, he died. The mystery of his death has remained unsolved till date.

Achieving Independence and Partition of India

The commanders of Indian national Army were arrested as prisoners of war and were accused of treason and put on trial. Bulabhai Desai and Jawarharlal Nehru pleaded their case. The whole country took keen interest in this case. When the British Government inflicted them with punishment, there were protests against them in the entire country. So bowing to populist opinion, the government had to withdraw the punishment. These events and with the naval mutiny of Bombay (1946), the British realised their rule in India will no longer be tenable. On February 20, 1947 Attlee, the Prime Minister of Britain announced that the British Government shall give all the powers to the Government of India as per the Cabinet Mission formula and shall quit India by June 1948.

Thus, in a changed situation, Mountbatten was appointed as Viceroy in place of Lord Wavell. When he took charge of his post, communal riots had started in India, the condition of India had become pathetic. In July 1946, the Congress secured 201 seats out of 210 and Muslim League 73 seats out of 78 from provinces of India for the prior formation of the Constituent Assembly. The League pressurised the government for Pakistan, on 16th August, 1946. So terrible communal riots and tumult spread all over India. Looking at the situation in India, Sardar Patel, Jawaharlal Nehru and other congress leaders felt there was no other alternative except accepting the demand of Muslim League for Pakistan, because Muslim League and Jinnah insisted for separate Pakistan. The Muslim League boycotted the first Cabinet meeting on December 9, 1946. The Muslim League executive held on January 31, 1947, decided to boycott the cabinet meeting and gave a rapid and extensive programme for the demand of Pakistan. Mountbatten convinced Nehru and Sardar Patel who understood the matter that “having a well-organised Central Government having administrative units under the centre, shall be more peaceful and progressive instead of weak Central Government consisting of many autonomous and opposite constituents.” National leaders found this argument acceptable. Sardar Patel and Nehru discussed this matter with Gandhiji, who also helplessly accepted arrangement of partition of India with heavy hearts.

Mountbatten Plan (1947) and Partition of India

On March 24, Viceroy Mountbatten presented his scheme. According to him, there was no alternative other than the Partition of India. National and prolific leaders like Sardar Patel understood the matter. After many discussions and pondering, finally on June 3, 1947 Viceroy Mountbatten decided to plan the partition of India. This



Freedom and Acceptance of Partiton in Meeting
(Photo related to Mount batten plan & Partition Of India)

plan is known as Mountbatten Plan. The Congress Leaders and Muslim League accepted this plan. When Mountbatten Plan started getting implemented, the people of East Bengal and Sylhet province of Assam decided to join East Pakistan, West Bengal and East Bengal were affiliated with India as per decision of their assembly, West Punjab joined with Pakistan. It was decided to affiliate Northwest Province, Sindh and Baluchistan with Pakistan.

Indian Independence Act (July 1947)

The British Parliament passed the Indian Independence Act according to Mountbatten Plan. According to this, India's first Governor General was Mountbatten and Janab Jinnah was the Governor General of Pakistan. By this Act, India's dependence on British rule came to an end. Therefore Gandhiji considers this Act as “The one and only, best and beneficial Act given by the Bristishers to India”

The last viceroy of the British Government, organised a function in New Delhi at the midnight of August 14th. The Union Jack of England was brought down from the pole and the Indian National Flag, tricolour was hoisted. The documents attributing independence to India were handed over by Mountbatten to C.Rajgopalachari, the first Governor General of Independent India. Entire atmosphere was full of excitement. Entire process of transfer of power was completed. August 15, 1947 was an excellent dawn for India. All celebrated the first independence festival very pleasantly and cheerfully in the entire country. Everywhere people hung “Torans”, a good omen, on doors, sweets were distributed in schools, many people who had taken vow felt relieved on its fulfilment but Gandhiji was shocked due to the partition of India and therefore he was deeply plunged into grief and drifted into meditation.

India becoming Independent and the immediate problems of it

India and Pakistan, two separate, Independent nations, came into existence as a result of Mountbatten Plan and Indian Independence Act, 1947. The resolution to the following problems had to be found out : (1) Reorganisation of military forces (2) Disputes over assets and properties (3) Debts and Credits (4) Problem and settlement of refugees (5) Public services and the arrangement of civil servants and administrative staff (6) Demarcation of International boundaries on eastern and western side of India to be fixed etc.

A five member committee, consisting of two representatives each from India and Pakistan was formed under the chairmanship of Lord Mountbatten. The Committee appointed different commissions consisting of experts of relevant subjects to solve all the problems. In case of any differences of opinion, both the nations admitted to accept the final decision given by an arbitrator, consisting of one representative of India and one of Pakistan, under the Chairmanship of the former Chief Justice of India. Military Commandant General of India complied the partition of army military weapons, etc.,. The British army left India by February 28, 1948. All officers and employees of administration, military, judiciary were given opportunity to choose whether they would serve India or Pakistan. They were given assurance about their pay, allowance, security of service, pension etc. A large number of refugees from both countries migrated, leaving their houses and properties. India solved the tremendous problem of their rehabilitation and restoration very skilfully and patiently. The then Deputy Prime Minister and Home Minister Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel merged about 562 small and big Princely States of India into ‘Indian Union’. Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel's strong determination, iron will and diplomatic negotiations solved the problems.

Yet, long-term planning, to find a solution to problems like effects of communal riots due to partition, the shock of Mahatma Gandhi's death, to make Independent India, self-reliant with the help of good Governance, the weak condition of Indian agriculture, to create an atmosphere of peace and tranquility in the country, the internal-external security of the country etc. became necessary.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions to the point :

- (1) ‘Quit India Movement’ and the various incidents of the movement.
- (2) Give a detail about the role of Azad Hind Fauj in achieving freedom for India.

2. Write short notes on :

- (1) Simon Commission
- (2) Demand for Complete Independence
- (3) Dandi March
- (4) Subhash Chandra Bose

3. Give answers of following questions in one or two sentences :

- (1) Why did the people of India oppose the Simon Commission ?
- (2) Give the slogans of “Azad Hind Fauj”.
- (3) When was the Lord Mountbatten Plan presented ?
- (4) When power was transferred to India by the British, who was appointed as the First Indian Governor General of India ?

4. From the below given options ,choose the correct option and write the answer :

- (1) How many members were there in Simon Commission ?
 (A) 5 (B) 6
 (C) 7 (D) 8
- (2) When did Dandi March start ?
 (A) 12th April 1930 (B) 12th March 1931
 (C) 12th March 1930 (D) 12th March 1929
- (3) Which person compares Dandi March as “Mahabinishkraman “ ?
 (A) Mahadevbhai Desai (B) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
 (C) Maulana Azad (D) Subhash Chandra Bose
- (4) What is Dominion Status ?
 (A) Dominion Freedom (B) Secularism
 (C) Complete Freedom (D) Dictatorship
- (5) According to Montford Provision, how many years are needed for the improvement in the commission ?
 (A) 20 years (B) 10 years
 (C) 7 years (D) 5 years
- (6) Who died in lathicharge while opposing Simon Commission ?
 (A) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru (B) Lala Lajpatrai
 (C) Govind Vallabh Pant (D) Motilal Nehru
- (7) Who affectionately got the name ‘Netaji’ ?
 (A) Subhash Chandra Bose (B) Vallabh Bhai Patel
 (C) Rasbihari Bose (D) Jawaharlal Nehru
- (8) Who was the British Governor General during the partition of India ?
 (A) Montague Chemsford (B) Wellesley
 (C) Mountbatten (D) Dalhousie

Activity

- Highlight the route of Dandi march in Gujarat map.
- Prepare the list of Satyagrahis who participated in Dandi March.
- Obtain a book on Subhash Chandra Bose and read.

The pages of history are full of innumerable wars fought in ancient India and the world. Yet the most destructive war which will always be remembered in the modern world is the FIRST AND the SECOND WORLD WAR. The league of Nations was formed with the purpose of establishing permanent peace in the world. But, due to certain limitations it failed and in 1939 World War-II broke out. The disturbed state of mind and the horrors of World War II persuaded human beings to, once again, make efforts for peace and protection of Independence. This resulted in the establishment of the United Nations (24th October, 1945).

The United Nations' Charter

The United Nations' Charter starts with the Preamble and it explains the goals of UNITED NATIONS. Below given are the goals :

- (1) There is a determination to save the future generation from the pangs of all destructive war. Here, emphasis has been laid on responsibilities born out of international laws and mutual understanding.
- (2) Emphasis has been laid on developing tolerance mutually so that the whole world develops socially.
- (3) Economic, Social and Cultural problems should be solved with the intervention of United Nations and human rights as well as basic freedom should be disseminated irrespective of caste, language, gender or religion.
- (4) Lastly, appeal to all the nations for co-operation to achieve these objectives.

Thus, United Nations' Charter concludes that dismissal of war and constant urge for peace is the main objective of United Nations.

Cold War (1945-1962) –Reasons and Consequences

Though the World War II got over, it resulted into creation of America and Russia as superpowers while taking the place of England and France. In war, England, France, Russia and America were together but Russian administration policies created differences and thus America and England separated. A strong competition between the two super powers, i.e., America and Russia, to establish supremacy over the world emerged after Second World War. The power was centralised between two poles i.e., America and Russia. Therefore, this time period is considered as bi-polar world order. Owing to extremely tense relations between two power blocs this phase is known as the 'Cold War Phase'. At various incidents both the superpowers almost came into conflict with one another.

There was a basic change in relations among powerful nations of the world after the World War. America and the Soviet Union, who had once allied and fought against the Nazi Germany and the Fascist Italy, emerged as leaders of two rival power blocs and military powers. Thus the Cold War started between them. Though Britain and France also had emerged victorious, yet they lost the status of great powers due to terrible ruination caused by the ravages of war and ending of imperialism. Germany, Italy and Japan not only lost the War, but also were ruined economically, politically and militarily. After the War, the Soviet Union (Russia) captured the eastern areas of Germany and other eastern countries like Austria, Albania, Hungary, Yugoslavia, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Romania Bulgaria and the Baltic states. Later on, they gave away reins of power to respective communist parties of those countries. They did this to continue their superiority on these countries. During 1949,

by conducting a nuclear test, the Soviet Union directly challenged the monopolistic nuclear powers of America. Meanwhile, democratic system was gradually established in the western European countries that were liberated by British and American forces.

The world destributed among Army group

One of the most important aspects of the conflict of ideology was mutual distrust and sense of doubt on the intention of the rival group. Owing to fear born out of mutual distrust and doubts, both the power established their own military bases. Led and inspired by America, western democratic countries on the North Atlantic Ocean established a military organisation, NATO (North Atlantic Treaty organisation) in April 1949. Thereafter to protect south eastern countries from the onslaught on the Soviet Union communism, America and England established one more military organisation in 1945, SEATO (South Eastern Asiatic Treaty organisation).

One more military organisation CENTO (Central Asia Treaty Organisation) was established in Middle Eastern countries under the leadership and inspiration of England. Here, various Arab countries joined CENTO. Later on, America took over its leadership.

Armament,Disarmament, Nuclear weapon creation and its application

The Cold War, which was meant for dominance over the world, gave rise to fierce competition among superpowers. And for the sake of dominance, armament race was given high priority. America had used atom bomb for the first time on two cities of Japan, namely Hiroshima and Nagasaki (1945).

This way America proved its supremacy. Within next four years, the Soviet Union too proved its capacity of making atom bomb by conducting a nuclear test. This created a Power Balance between the superpowers.

America declared blockade of the communist Cuba, which was on southeast. To defend Cuba against possible attacks of America, the Soviet Union sent ships loaded with nuclear missiles in the Caribbean Sea. Both the superpowers threatened each other to use nuclear weapons. The world was almost on the verge of nuclear war. Finally, leaders of America and the Soviet Union had a talk on the 'Hotline' for the first time. The Soviet Union decided to withdraw its ships and America decided to curb nuclear missiles aimed towards Cuba. The whole episode is known as 'Cuban Crisis'. This episode is very important episode in world politics. It begins communication between two superpowers. This incident is important towards the process of disarmament of nuclear weapons. The entire 'Cuban Crisis' is considered as the beginning of the end of the coldwar.

America, the Soviet Union, and the Britian agreed on maintaining control over nuclear production, experiment and proliferation. This agreement is known as Partial Nuclear Test Ban Treaty. France, of course, refused to sign this treaty. China also conducted a nuclear test in 1964 and refused to sign the Treaty. This Treaty imposed ban on conducting a nuclear test in open atmosphere. And of course, except communist China, the other four were already permanent members of the United Nations Security Council. (possessing veto power.)

Apart from nuclear weapons and missiles, the superpowers have also developed chemical and biological weapons. These weapons of mass destruction can kill millions of people without damaging any materialistic wealth. People would die miserably while suffering from various diseases because of these lethal weapons.

During these decades, many important and far-fetching changes took place in international politics. Owing to many reasons, the Cold War among super powers also ended and so the Nuclear Ban Treaty helped in this concern. India has always welcomed this treaty but it is always a supporter of disarmament. The world will be always in danger until the disarmament of lethal weapons is not done.

Rise of Independent Nations in Asia

India achieved independence in 1947 after long freedom struggle. Owing to Britain's Policy of divide and rule and certain other reasons, the country was divided into two nations, namely India and Pakistan. In the same way, with continuous struggle against Britishers, countries like Srilanka and Myanmar got independence in (1948). In the case of Indonesia, the United Nations played an important role (1949). Asian countries like Laos, Cambodia and Vietnam too got independence.

Rise of Independent Nations in Africa

The second World War proved to be a good omen for the enslaved Nations of Africa. After the Second World War, countries like Abyssinia (Ethiopia), South Africa and Egypt were independent. The Second World War and the freedom struggle in Asian countries inspired the other African countries too. It resulted in that during the tenure of 16 years from 1951 to 1966, 40 small and large countries became free. Imperialist countries tried to have supremacy over these countries but these countries either joined the superpowers or the military resources and got their freedom.

Non-Aligned Movement

Some new nations adopted the policy of not to align with any of the two power blocs and military blocs. They decided that they would maintain equal distance with both blocs. These nations were identified as 'Non-Aligned Nations' and their foreign policy was called 'Non-Aligned Policy'.

Those neutral nations, that did not want to adopt the ideologies of either of the two Superpowers of the World, wished to have an all-round development, maintaining its unique existence. Under the leadership of India's first Prime Minister, Jawaharlal Nehru; Indonesia's first President, Sukarno; Egypt's second President, Gamal Abdel Nasser; Ghana's first President Kwame Nkrumah; and Yugoslavia's President, Josip Broz Tito got a thumbing support for the movement. In this Non-Alignment Council 23 countries of Asia and 6 countries of Africa were present. The organization was founded in Belgrade in 1961 known as NAM (Non-Aligned Movement). Under the leadership of Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru the policies of Non-Alignment were framed. NAM completed valuable leadership. Nehru believed that movement continues to see a role for itself, as in its view, the world's poorest nations remain exploited and marginalised, no longer by opposing superpowers, but rather in a uni-polar world, and it is Western hegemony and neo-colonialism that the movement has really re-aligned itself again. It opposes foreign occupation, interference in internal affairs and aggressive unilateral measures, but it has also shifted to focus on the socio-economic challenges facing member states, especially the inequalities manifested by globalization and the implications of neo-liberal policies. The Non-Aligned Movement has identified economic underdevelopment, poverty, and social injustices as growing threats to peace and security.

Today more and more countries have joined the Non-Aligned Movement. Union summit was held at Kuala Lumpur on 13th May, 2003. For the last four decades many incidents have happened. With the disintegration of Soviet Union and Russia's power decreased. America emerged as a superpower. Imperial policy decreased to minimum in other countries. In these situations, Non-Aligned Movement played a dominant role.

The Non-Aligned Nations, with their Non-Aligned policy, were successful in contributing towards World Politics. The Non-Aligned movement was successful in showing off its moral impact for maintaining world peace, stopping wars, maintaining human society and nationalism as well as the Superpowers adopting an attitude of disarmament.

Partition and Unification of Germany

Germany was the main cause behind both the World Wars. It faced a humiliating defeat in World War II.

All its state administration and economy collapsed completely. There was not a single large party left in the whole of Germany that could rule the nation. In addition to that there was fear that Germany would pose threat to the world once again, if it emerges as a military power once again. Therefore, the defeated Germany was divided into four administrative segments. The 'Soviet Red Army', in the later phase of the war, had captured the eastern part of Germany. Therefore, it was accepted that eastern Germany would remain in their control. Where as it was decided that America would control south-western side of Germany. France would control its area near France, while Britain would control areas of Germany bordering Belgium and Holland.

America, France and Britain started thinking about certain alternative arrangement. Meanwhile an atmosphere of distrust and doubt had already started between two power blocs. America and other western European countries established 'Federal Republic of Germany'. This was administered jointly by America, Britain and France. On the other side, the Soviet Union also declared 'East Germany' as 'Democratic Republic of East Germany.' Thus, after the War, two independent German states came into existence, namely West Germany (democratic) and East Germany (communist). As Germany's three western segments were united, three administrative segments of Berlin also united. In a reaction to this, Soviet Union, in April 1948, declared 'Berlin Blockade'. This resulted into tremendous tension between the Soviet Union and the western countries. Later on, a high and 42 km long wall separating western and eastern Berlin was constructed. The communist government tried to prevent thousands of East German citizens from jumping and entering into the free atmosphere of Western Germany. Many people lost their lives in doing so. After about four to four and half decades, Western Germany made an astonishing development. Experts consider this as 'German Miracle.' There was no remarkable change in the economic condition of East Germany. The East German communist government crushed all hopes of its people for political freedom and rapid economic development.

Till 1990 many important and far-fetching changes took place in international politics. Owing to many reasons, the Cold war among super powers also ended. These years witnessed cracks in other wise impregnable Soviet Union. Ultimately Soviet Union was disintegrated. As a consequence of it, on October 3rd, 1990 both the Germany united. People broke down the German wall, which was a symbol of German division. People considered demolition of the Berlin Wall as the end of the Cold War era and celebrated the occasion wholeheartedly. Today unified Germany has turned out to be the strongest economic power in Europe. After 1990, they have made a tremendous effort to be the strongest economic nation in the last decade. Today it has become one of the most important and leading nations in the European Union.

Disintegration of Soviet Union

During the last decade of the twentieth century, Soviet Union's Prime Minister Mikhail Gorbachev's liberal policy led to the disintegration of Soviet Union (Russia). Peaceful disintegration of Soviet Union is considered as epoch-making in the international politics. Mikhail Gorbachev became the Prime Minister from a socialistic side on 11th March, 1989. He had a liberal attitude. Russia had progressed tremendously in the field of science and technology. They also had acquired capability to compete with superpowers like America.

Gorbachev adopted two policies 'Glasnost and 'Perestroika'. In this way Gorbachev introduced economic and political reforms in the place of single-handed communist rule. The Stronghold of communist party, the Soviet bureaucracy and the Red Army started weakening.

In 1990, process of the disintegration of the Soviet Union began. Towards the end, out of 15 states, 14 states became independent and disintegration of Soviet Union came to an end (December, 1991).

India's Contribution at the International Level

India has contributed significantly at the international level during its freedom struggle and after its independence. India has always opposed imperialism, colonialism and evils like racial discrimination. It has supported movements opposing such evils. India has always remained active in the formation of the United Nations and is actively involved in all its activities. India has played an important role by sending its military to support the United Nations' efforts in maintaining international peace and security. India has worked appreciably by sending military troops to countries like Gaza, Cyprus, Congo, and Sri Lanka during their conflicts. India has helped actively in maintaining peace. India has persistently emphasised on the need of disarmament to achieve world peace and security. In this issue, it has taken leadership in debates world around and in making useful suggestions. India has expressed the desire of the entire humanity for peace by presenting a proposal for total nuclear disarmament in the United Nations' General Assembly. To spend the money in the upliftment of poor people in other countries instead of using money in creation of nuclear weapon and military has been always been a demand from India in the United Nations. World peace has permanently remained India's primary concern for its foreign policy. India has always remained active to achieve an atmosphere of co-operation, trust and understanding among nations.

India's relations with other Countries

Relation between India and United States (US)

Both India and the United States are democratic countries. Apart from having lot of similarities, there has been lot of ups and downs in the relationship also.

The United States did not like India's role of not joining any power bloc and accepting non-aligned policy after its independence. Further they hoped that India would join them but India joined Non- Aligned movement for its economic growth. There is another reason that amicable relation between India and US could not grow. That is US's policy of favouring Pakistan. They supported Pakistan in the case of Jammu-Kashmir, Pakistan had joined US led power and military bloc, where as India had adopted policy of Non-Alignment. Treaties regarding nuclear weapons have become one of the most important points of disagreement between India and United States. United States has persisted that India should sign the 'Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty' and 'Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty'. When India conducted nuclear test in Pokhran in Rajasthan in 1998, it was taken seriously and certain sanctions were imposed against India as US aided financially and technically.

There is a remarkable change in relations between both countries after terrorist attack on New York's World Trade Centre on September 11, 2001. The United States is now accepting the fact that India is growing economically very fast. Now, both the countries wish that there should be intimate relationship with each other.

In September 2014-15, India's Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi visited America and even addressed the United Nations. American President Barak Obama was the first American President to be the Chief Guest for India's 66th Republic Day Celebration. In this way, America and India now has a cordial and amicable relation. The issues of terrorism are concerns of the Heads of the country.

Relation between India and the Soviet Union (Russia)

The Soviet Union has helped India considerably in establishing heavy and key industries. The Soviet Union has taken India's side in the issue of Jammu-Kashmir. They also have often exercised their 'veto' power in the

United Nation's Security Council to see that proposal against India pertaining to Jammu-Kashmir issue should not pass. In this way, Russia and India has a very close friendly relations.

India's relation with its Neighbouring Countries

India-Pakistan : Immediately after India's Independence, the relation between India and Pakistan were always stressful. Three gruesome wars took place between India and Pakistan in the year 1948, 1965 and 1971, and in all these wars Pakistan was defeated. Both the countries have Tashkent and Shimla Treaty, but Pakistan does not follow it with utmost devotion. In 1999, Kargil war between India and Pakistan took place. Fortunately, Heads of both the countries have expressed eagerness to resolve all issues peacefully through negotiations.

India - China : India and China relations started in the year 1954. When China displayed its boundary regions on map, it disturbed the relations between India and China. India opposed greatly when China showed most of the regions belonging to India as belonging to them. The McMahon border showing the border region between India and China was rejected by China and it led to further discomfort in the relations. China attacked India in 1962 and captured the regions which were displayed in their map. India sent military troops to its border regions to safeguard from China. China made a full stop to the war and in this way war ended. To resolve these problems many meetings were held but it turned out to be futile. But in the last decades, China and India has a co-operative and friendly relations. India's Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi invited Shri Jin Ping, the Prime Minister of China, to the river front, Ahmedabad, for a courtesy visit.

India - Bangladesh : Bangladesh got freedom after many struggles. In the year 1971 , Bangladesh became an independent and sovereign country as earlier it was a part of Pakistan. As a new upcoming country, India helped Bangladesh financially, technically and physically by giving equipment for its growth and development. But there are certain issues which have risen between India and Bangladesh. The utilization of water from River Ganga and its proper channelizing has been talked out between the two countries. During flood, cyclone and other natural calamities, India has helped immensely. In 2015, concrete talks have taken place in matters of disputed geographical land regions and the citizenship of people.

India - Bhutan : A peaceful and cordial friendship treaty had been signed between India and Bhutan in the year 1949. Bhutan has trustfully sided India in its security and foreign policies. India assured to aid Bhutan in telecommunication and transportation. Prime Minister Jawarharlal Nehru visited Bhutan in the year 1958 and thereafter Indian President too had visited Bhutan in the year 1970. India helped Bhutan in becoming a member of United Nations in the year 1971. There is never a troubled relation between India and Bhutan. India's Prime Minister Shri NarendraModi visited Bhutan in the year 2014 and said that India's progress has direct effect on its neighbouring countries. The inter-security related co-operation has been done satisfactorily.

India - Srilanka : The relation between India and Srilanka is very old. Many tamilians of India have gone to Srilanka and settled thereafter. Their citizenship was the main issue between India and Srilanka but continuous talks has resolved it. The problems of tamilians and peaceful talks between Tamil organisations and Srilankan government was the priority of India. India's Prime Minister Shri NarendraModi visited the troubled regions of Tamilians in Jaffna on 13th March, 2015. India assisted financially for the reconstruction of 27,000 houses for rehabilitation of tamilians. Today India and Srilanka have very cordial relation.

India - Nepal : The relation between India and Nepal started with the signing of Treaty in the year 1950.

According to the treaty, both countries are considered to be sovereign and to preserve regional unity as well as commutation of citizens in both the countries. India has helped Nepal socially and economically. Nepali students visit India for higher studies. The rivers flowing from Himalaya come from the various regions of Nepal. Due to this, during rain it affects India badly. To stop the floods due to these rivers, talks have begun between these two countries. On 25th April, 2015 Nepal faced a destructive earthquake of the magnitude of 7.8 on Richter scale, which caused the death of 8000 people. India aided in Relief and Rehabilitation work in the areas affected by earthquake.

India – Afghanistan : India has very friendly relation with Afghanistan. India has large heartedly contributed in the reconstruction of Afghanistan like in construction, health and education. In the economic and social development, India has financially helped. During Natural calamities also India helped financially. The construction of Afghanistan's parliament building is being done by India.

India - Myanmar : India and Myanmar(Burma) has very cordial relation .After India got independence Myanmar got independence in 1948.From that time, relationship has been friendly. After independence Myanmar has demanded financial aid from India. India has helped them instantly because India wants Myanmar to be financially sound.

India's foreign policy is to have world peace and security. Furthermore Indian Foreign Policy ensures friendly and cordial relationship with its neighbouring countries. But there always has been a rise and fall in these relations owing to various reasons

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions :

- (1) Write about the United Nations and its aims.
- (2) Explain the meaning of the Policy of Non-Alignment.
- (3) Write in brief about the consequences of 'Cold War'.
- (4) Explain in brief the disintegration and unification of Germany.
- (5) Discuss in brief the relation between India and Russia.
- (6) Write short on : 'Military Blocs', 'NATO', 'SEATO', 'WARSAW PACT'.

2. Answer following questions in brief :

- (1) After World War II , how did the conflict between power blocs cause the situation of conflict ?
- (2) What were Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru's thoughts on the Policy of Non-Alignment ?
- (3) What is Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty? Why India has not signed it ?

3. Write short notes on :

- (1) Armament and Disarmament
- (2) Cuban Crisis
- (3) Disintegration of Soviet Union
- (4) Berlin Blockade

4. State reasons for the following statements :

- (1) Establishment of the United Nations is the starting point of New World.
- (2) Cuban Crisis is considered as the beginning of the end of Cold War.

5. Choose the correct options for each statements and write down the answer :

- (1) How does the charter of United Nations begin ?
 (A) Declaration Letter (B) Foreword
 (C) Human Rights (D) Constitution
- (2) Which of these event is considered as the beginning of Cold War ?
 (A) Berlin Blockade (B) Disintegration of Germany
 (C) German Miracle (D) Unification of Germany
- (3) Which ideology was followed by the countries coming under the leadership of Soviet Union ?
 (A) Democratic (B) Imperialism
 (C) Socialistic (D) Liberalism
- (4) Who was the promoter of Non-Aligned Movement from India ?
 (A) Lalbahadur Shastri (B) Dr. Radhakrishnan
 (C) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru (D) Smt. Indira Gandhi
- (5) Which Policy played an important role in the International Politics ?
 (A) Non-Aligned Policies (B) Cold War Policies
 (C) Disarmament Policies (D) Establishment Policies

Teacher's Activity

- Give information about Unification of Germany and demonstrate it in a picture.
- Arrange a discussion on the topic: "Human race has to select between Destruction and World peace."
- Arrange a debate on the future of United Nations.

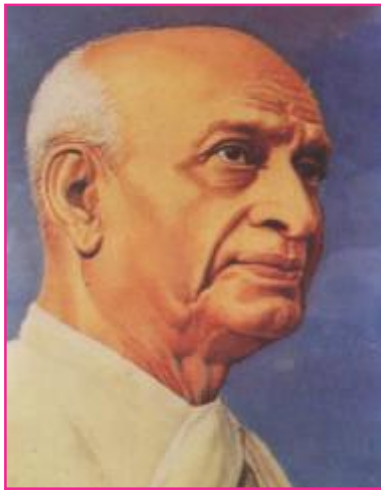
Student's Activity

- List the names of countries which became independent after World War II.
- Prepare a map of Republic countries disintegrated from old Soviet Union and Russia.
- Collect information from internet regarding Soviet Russia, United Nations and World War II.
- Gather newspaper cuttings related to the news of United Nations.

The Article for India's Independence was passed in the British Parliament in the year 1947. According to the Article, India and Pakistan got its existence. There were two major problems before the country:

- (1) Framing the constitution of India
- (2) To put an end to the sovereignty of British Empire on the Princely states and merging them into making an intact India.

At that time, there were 562 Princely states. 48% Princely states had stakes in the total area of India. 20% of India's population resided in these Princely states. Kashmir, Hyderabad and Mysore were big states. Other states were small. There were states which were too small and were as village in form. It was a mammoth task to convince these Kings and nawabs. Moreover, it was to be done very speedily.



Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel

After gaining Independence Maharaja of Bhavnagar, Krushna Kumarsinh, was the first King to start responsible Government (15th January, 1948). Bhavnagar State was merged with United Saurashtra State, which was created due to efforts of Sardar Patel (15th February, 1948). The event of formation of United Saurashtra State was described by Jawaharlal Nehru as the most notable merger in contemporary history.

Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel appealed to the Kings and Nawabs of the Princely states that they should voluntarily forsake their respective states in the interest of their subjects and the Union of India. He stimulated nationalism. Kings, Rajwadas and Nawabs contributed in the making of a strong, integrated and prosperous India. Sardar Patel assured them to protect their rights and interests. Sardar

Patel and his secretary of the Home Department Mr. V.P. Menon prepared the draft for 'Attachment bond' and 'Status Quo Agreement'. Related contribution in the draft were made by committees comprising Kings and final formation of draft was made. Kings were happy by this draft. Except Kashmir, Hyderabad and Junagadh, 559 princely states accepted this instrument of accession and joined the Union of India.

Merger of Hyderabad, Junagadh and Kashmir

Hyderabad : Nizam of Hyderabad with its states from southern part of India declared its independence on 15th of August. As far as its geographical location, it was bound to join India. But the fact was brought to their notice that Hyderabad won't be able to remain as an independent state as it is surrounded by Indian Territory. The Nizam clarified the matter by saying that if the country will be divided, then owing to geographical reasons they would not be able to join Pakistan and they would not be able to join India owing to ideological reasons. Under such circumstances, they would prefer to remain independent. Negotiations began with the Nizam. Sardar Patel bluntly stated to the negotiator of the Nizam that people of Hyderabad are eager to be with the Union of India. Meanwhile the Nizam officers started committing atrocities on the people of Hyderabad. Ultimately Hyderabad was merged with the Union of India by using 'police force' on 18th September 1948. Sardar Patel assured the Nizam to protect all their interests. Kanaialal Munshi played a very crucial role in the entire episode. After the reforming of states, the state of Hyderabad was later included in Andhra Pradesh.

Junagadh : On the day of Independence, the Nawab of Junagadh wrote an instrument of accession to join Pakistan. Pakistan, in turn, gave them consent. Sardar Patel decided to take counter measures against this. People of Junagadh living in Mumbai established 'Aarzi Hakumat' in Mumbai. During this time, Sheikhs of Mangrol and Manavadar declared their wish to join the Union of India. Indian soldiers and navy who were positioned to protect Manavadar and Mangrol, besieged the Junagadh State. The Nawab of Junagadh fled

to Pakistan. On 9th of November, 1947, referendum of the people of Junagadh was taken. Thus, Junagadh's merger with the union of India was made possible owing to Sardar Patel's guts and tremendous will of people of Junagadh.

Kashmir : The issue of Kashmir was the most complicated of all. Raja Harisingh of Kashmir was indecisive. Meanwhile, Pakistan attacked Kashmir. Raja Harisingh requested for military assistance to protect Jammu and Kashmir against Pakistani attack. The Government of India insisted that Raja Harisingh should first sign the instrument of accession and then the Indian army could be sent. One of the clauses in instrument of accession was that after restoration of normal situation in Kashmir, plebiscite would be held for permanent merger with India. Immediately after signing the letter, the Indian army protected Kashmir. But Pakistan had already occupied one third portion of Kashmir by that time. But the rest of Kashmir was saved. India has registered a complaint against Pakistan in the Security Council of the United Nations. The Security Council suggested for cease fire. Even today, Kashmir issue is a contentious issue in the relations between India and Pakistan. In this way, towards the end of 1948 political unity of India was established by various historical and non-violent movements.

Merger of French and Portuguese Colonies

India emerged as an independent and sovereign state on January 26th, 1950. But certain colonies of the French and the Portuguese rule were still under their control. Union of India appealed the French –controlled Pondicherry and Portuguese-controlled Diu, Daman and Goa to merge with India.

People of these colonies wanted desperately to join the Union of India. They started vigorous movement for the purpose. The French tried to suppress these freedom movements. In a mammoth meeting organised at Pondicherry, people gave the French government the 'Hind chhodo' (Leave India) slogan. The Indian government started negotiation for peaceful solution of the Pondicherry issue with the French government. But people were not satisfied with that. In Yanam, People's Liberation Army had taken over the administration in their hands on June 13, 1954. The French government realised people's rage and was compelled to start negotiation with the Indian government. All the French colonies Karaikal, Mahe, Yanam and Chandranagar were handed over to India for further reconstruction (October 31st, 1954). And further they were taken under Union territory of Pondicherry.

With the reconstruction of Indian states, Pondicherry had Karaikal in Tamilnadu, Mahe in Kerala, Yanam in Andhrapradesh and Chandranagar in West Bengal. Pondicherry is the administrative center of all these territories.

Merger of Diu, Daman and Goa : 15th August, 1947, political leaders and Satyagrahis entered Diu, Daman and Goa. In 'Free Goa Agitation' thousands of volunteers died. As attempts such as negotiation, persuasion and Satyagrahs proved to be unsuccessful, the Indian government decided to begin 'Operation Vijay' to liberate Goa. On the midnight of December 19th, Governor of Portuguese, De-Silva, surrendered to Indian government. The Indian army captured Goa, Daman and Diu and hoisted Indian flag there. Thus the last remains of the Western rule disappeared from India. On 12th March, 1962, Goa, Dadra, Nagar Haveli, Daman, and Diu were merged with Union of India. These states were known as Union Territories. On 30th May, 1987, Daman and Diu were separated from Goa. Thereafter, Silvassa was made the capital of Dadra, Nagar Haveli, Daman was made the capital of Diu and Daman and Panji was made the capital of Goa.

Formation and Reorganisation of Indian States

India became independent and acquired information about unification of princely states. Instead of accepting unitary system, we had accepted union system of governance. Therefore, the issue of formation and reorganisation of constituents of the union occurred. The erstwhile British provinces and Princely States were divided into four divisions after their unification and merger. They are as follows :

(a) Classification of states- class A - Mumbai, Assam, Andhra, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madras, Orissa and West Bengal were included.

(b) Classification of States - class B - Jammu-Kashmir, Hyderabad, Mysore, Central India, Rajasthan, Saurashtra, Travancore-Cochin and Pepsu(Patiala and East Punjab states of Union).

(c) Classification of States - class C - Ajmer, Bhopal, Coorg, Delhi, Bilaspur, Kutch, Himachal Pradesh, Tripura, Manipur and Vindhya Pradesh.

(d) Classification of States - class D - Andaman and Nicobar islands were included.

Interestingly, states included in all four classes did not have equal status. However, they were inseparable parts of India. In this way, when the Constitution of India came into force, India was the Union of these states. However, this proved to be temporary arrangement. Thereafter, a new demand of reorganisation of states on linguistic bases started becoming strong. In 1953, Jawaharlal Nehru considered the issue of reorganization of states and appointed State Reorganisation Commission'. Retired Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of India, Justice Fazal Ali was appointed as its Chairman. The other two members of the Commission were Mr.HridaynathKunzru and Mr.K.M.Panikkar. This commission asked all the states to submit its recommendation through various public opinions, views and through postal interaction. Above all bilingual Mumbai state was reformed in which Maharashtra, Gujarat and Saurashtra were included and Mumbai was made as the capital of this state. Finally a Bill, making changes in the Constitution and reorganising states was passed and implemented from 1956.

The old classification of the states as class A, B, C, and D was dissolved. Amendments were made in the first Appendix of the Indian Constitution and in place of the earlier classification, two parts were formed comprising of the Constituent States and Union Territories. The fourteen states included ; Andhra Pradesh, Assam, Bihar, Mumbai , Jammu-Kashmir, Kerala , Madhya Pradesh, Madras, Mysore, Orissa , Punjab, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal. While Union territories included Delhi, Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Tripura, Andaman, Nicobar , Lakshadweep.

Finally, Central Government made two separate states, Maharashtra and Gujarat on May 1, 1960. On 25th May, 1960, recognition of Maharashtra as a state was made and its capital, Mumbai. 1st May, 1960, is considered as the Foundation day of Gujarat and it included the regions of Saurashtra and Kutch.

Assam, Meghalaya, Manipur, Tripura, Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, and Nagaland were recognized as the 'Land of Seven Sisters'.

There was always a continuous demand for formation of separate small states from the bigger states. In the year 2000, Jharkhand(capital-Ranchi) was separated from Bihar, Chattisgarh (capital-Raipur) was separated from Madhya Pradesh, Uttarakhand (capital-Dehradun) was separated from Uttar Pradesh and were recognised as states. In 2014, Telangana was recognised as separate state from Andhra Pradesh. Even today, the demand for various separate states has been going on, the latest one being the Vidarbha region of Maharashtra.

Currently, the Indian Union consists of 29 states: Assam, Bihar, Goa, Gujarat, Himachal Pradesh, Haryana, Karnataka, Kerala, Jammu-Kashmir, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Manipur, Meghalaya, Mizoram, Nagaland, Rajasthan, Orissa, Punjab, Tamilnadu, Telangana, Uttar Pradesh, Sikkim, Tripura, West Bengal, Chhattisgarh, Uttarakhand, Arunachal Pradesh, Delhi and Jharkhand, 6 Union Territories: Chandigarh, Pondicherry, Lakshadweep, Daman, Diu, Dadra and Nagar Haveli and one National Capital-Delhi.



7.1 India : States and Union Territories

Regionalism

India has unity in diversity in which people following diverse religions, speaking different languages, belonging to different castes, races and cultures have been living since centuries in this country. No other country in the world has such diversity as India has. Cultural progress is not associated with particular caste or creed but it's a unified effort of people living in India.

One of the main reasons for creating the feeling of regionalism are certain greedy politicians, various communal groups who exploit the feelings of people and lure them for their motives. The people who create and instigate regionalism are harmful elements for national unity and integrity. The aspiration for personal development is good thought. But the one who poses danger to the society at large never aspires for overall development of a country. Activities harming one's own state and country, should not be done. Instead, working towards one's own country is necessary. After achieving independence, country should come first instead of state.

It becomes very obvious for people speaking common language, sharing common culture and living in certain specific geographical region for a long time to develop emotional bondage for one another. Language, Caste and Religion are the three main important factors for creating Regionalism.

Language : Language stimulates regionalism. North India, Hindi speakers while South India, Non-Hindi speakers demand new regions according to languages. The States Reorganisation Commission already implemented the recommendation of division of regions as per the Linguistic barriers.

Caste and Religion : People belonging to different religions live in India. Superiority of one particular religion exists in certain regions. For example, Nagaland, Mizoram, Manipur and Arunachal Pradesh have different customs, traditions, life-style and profession. Bodo people in Assam have been demanding a different region therefore stormy movements are taking place. ULFA terrorism is active in Assam. Punjab and Haryana separated because of regionalism. In the same way, Jharkhand separated from Bihar, Chhattisgarh from Madhya Pradesh and Uttaranchal from Uttar Pradesh. Currently, the demand for a separate Vidarbha region from Maharashtra has been going on. It is not in the interest of the nation, as unity of country should be more important than demand of one particular region. The Constitution of India declares India as a sovereign, socialistic, secularist, democratic and republic country. During the time of reorganisation of state, regional demand should not be the priority but unity of the country should be the main aim.

Regional Inequality

The foreign rulers did not undertake developmental activities in places where they would not get any economic profit. As a result, there was regional inequality in such places. After independence, the Planning Commission was formed for social and economic development of India. One of its main aim was the balanced development of different regions. In fact, due to regional pressure, certain political reasons, the tug-of-war to take development programmes to their own regions, the maxims for development etc. and other factors played an important role in it. Therefore regional inequality is seen in matters of equal development. Resources of development, grants given are the factors for regional inequality.

Even within developed, moderately developed and less developed states, internal inequality exists considerably. For example, Maharashtra is in category of economically developed state. But its regions like Vidarbha and Marathwada are backward. Certain areas of Andhra Pradesh are well developed, while areas like Rayalseema and Telangana are considerably backward. Some regions are ahead in agricultural development while some regions in industrial development. There are many factors between the states which are quite visible for regionalism. There are some states who are at loggerheads for boundary issues even though they are in India. Like between Maharashtra and Karnataka, Punjab and Haryana the boundary issues are still going on. Narrow mindedness is seen in regions to acquire personal motive related to the flow of water and minerals, industrial raw

materials and agricultural sectors. This regional inequality and narrow mindedness is tremendously harmful to the unity of the country. Means for preserving country's dignity, superior position should be planned rather than taking interest in regional development.

Scientific and Technological Development

India has made extra ordinary achievements in the field of science and technology in the last half century. Looking at reasonably limited resources and less literacy, India's growth in the field of science and technology in comparison with other developed countries is unique. After independence , the distinguished national leaders and scientists like , Dr.HomiBhaba, Dr. Raja Rammana, Dr.Vikram Sarabhai, Dr.C.V.Raman and in the field of engineering Sir M.Vishwariya, Sam Pitroda, Dr.A.P.J. Abdul Kalam(India's former President) and the creator of the successful Metro Railway Project creator E.Shreedharan are those engineers, scientists and technocrats who had contributed remarkably in the field of Science andTechnology. Indian Institute of Science, Indian Institute of Technology, Indian Space Research Organisation, and Physical Research Laboratory are the glorious examples. Women of India too played a noticeable role and below given is the list :

Sr. No	Name	Field
1.	Janaki Amma	Flora(Vegetation)
2.	Azeema Chatterjee	Chemistry
3.	Dr. Indira Ahuja	Medicine
4.	Shankuntla Devi	Mathematician and (Human computer)
5.	Kalpna Chawla	Astronaut
6.	Sunita Williams	Astronaut

Women of India have contributed at large in other sectors too which brought further progress to our country.

At the time of our Independence, we were dependent on others for food grains. In making us self-reliant in this area, today, huge dams, lakes and canals have played a major role. We have been making use of modern agricultural technology to increase agricultural production for the country. We have been able to achieve Green Revolution. Agriculture institutions, laboratories and agriculture Universities have been established to achieve growth in agricultural science.

India has indeed made a significant headway in nuclear science and technology. India has established research institutes and laboratories for peaceful purpose of its nuclear power. Nuclear scientists and engineers have constructed ultra-modern nuclear reactors and power stations. By successfully conducting nuclear tests twice at Pokhran in Rajasthan we have been successful in making nuclear bombs.

India's achievement in a very short time in space research technology is spectacular. We have developed space shuttles Geosynchronous Satellite Launch Vehicle (GSLV) to launch satellites in outer space. We also have launched satellites in outer space. Satellites like 'Aryabhata' (1975), 'Bhaskar' (1979), 'Rohini' (1979) etc are useful in successfully conducting nuclear tests, in telecasting, education, weather and getting information about minerals through remote sensing system. In the last one decade, we have made significant progress in the fields of telecommunication and information technology through computer, internet, mobile, smartphone, tablet, fax, e-mail, twitter and computer whatsapp and so now India is considered in the race of developed nations. (Application of computers is successful in administration at large mainly for indirect use in environment preservation and carbon credit).

The use of Bio-technology in industries, energy, agriculture, health and the continuous research and development in that field has resulted in the maxims like 'Digital India' and 'Make in India' world famous. Marine research and continuous development, human resources development and harbour development including education and health sectors too are continuously involved in making progress. 21st June has been declared as 'World Yoga Day' by the United Nations, which shows the glowing future of India.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions :

- (1) Explain in brief about the merger of Princely states.
- (2) Discuss in brief about how are the states of Junagadh and Hyderabad merged in the Union of India.
- (3) Discuss the process of merger of Goa, Diu and Daman into the Union of India.

2. Answer the following questions in brief ;

- (1) Which appeal did Sardar Patel make to integrate princely States in the Union of India ?
- (2) Why was there a necessity to use 'police' force in Hyderabad ?
- (3) Why did the French government agree to relinquish their Indian settlements ?
- (4) What is 'Operation Vijay'? Why was it carried out ?

3. Write short notes on following ;

- (1) Sardar Patel's contribution in merger of Princely States.
- (2) Explain in brief India's development in the field of Science and Technology.
- (3) Green Revolution
- (4) Regionalism
- (5) Regional Inequality

4. Choose the correct option for each question and write down the answer :

- (1) After getting independence, who became the Home Minister of India ?
 (A) Subhash Chandra Bose (B) Gaekwad of Vadodra
 (C) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel (D) Motilal Nehru
- (2) Which of the following territory is not central territory ?
 (A) Chandigarh (B) Jammu-Kashmir
 (C) Lakshadweep (D) Pondicherry
- (3) Currently, how many states in the Indian Union are in existence ?
 (A) 26 States (B) 27 States
 (C) 28 States (D) 29 States
- (4) In the year 2014, which state was separated from Andhra Pradesh ?
 (A) Uttarakhand (B) Chattisgarh
 (C) Telangana (D) Bihar
- (5) Jharkhand state was separated from which state ?
 (A) Chattisgarh (B) Bihar
 (C) Telangana (D) Uttaranchal
- (6) From the below given states , which state doesn't belong to Seven Sisters ?
 (A) Manipur, Assam (B) Tripura, Arunachal
 (C) Mizoram, Nagaland (D) Uttarakhand, Jharkhand
- (7) From the below given states, which state is included in Union Territories ?
 (A) Andhra Pradesh (B) Goa
 (C) Puducherry (D) Gujarat
- (8) Which is the Foundation Day of Gujarat State ?
 (A) 1st May, 1961 (B) 1st May, 1960
 (C) 1st May, 1962 (D) 1st May, 1970
- (9) After India got independence, which commission was formed for social and economic development ?
 (A) Agricultural Commission (B) Education Commission
 (C) Planning Commission (D) Kothari Commission

Activity

- Gather information about North-East states (Seven sisters).
- Gather information about Aarzi (Temporary) Jurisdiction of Junagadh

Unit 2 : Making Of Modern Nation

So far we have studied the rise of the British Empire, India's political, social and religious movements, political movements of the world in the twentieth century, two World Wars, and nationalistic spirit prevailing in countries of Asia and Africa and about Freedom movements of India.

In this unit we are going to study about how modern India came into being. India achieved freedom and the need for the new Constitution for governing India, soon arose. The largest, extensive and written documentation which kept in mind the diversification of people's aspiration and expectation was made which is known as The Constitution of India. It came into existence on 26th January, 1950 and from that day India became the Republic Democratic country.

India a land of several languages and cultures, could best be governed on principles like democracy, socialism, secularism, and ensuring integration.

To dignity the lives of human beings security of personal freedom, national stability and state dictatorship, fundamental rights were established so that every citizen can have his/her rights.

Directive Principles were added in the policies of social, economic, political, constitutional remedies so that there can be equality in the administration of state.

Government has three organs that is Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. For the perfect synchronization of administration, provisions were made in the Constitution. How to administer a democratic country so that the provisions from local bodies to the Panchayati Raj further democratic process and give fruits of democracy for which constitutional remedies were incorporated.

For the implementation of Law, protection of Fundamental Rights, a free, impartial, unified judiciary is the pillar of democratic Constitution. The barometer of democracy is conducting election which is fair, transparent and just. Every citizen is free and equal to take part in planning and administration of democratic atmosphere. People can propose their opinions.

Politically aware citizens, keep a keen eye on the process of General Elections, Election Commission, political parties and functioning of organizations cultivating public opinion. And during elections, they elect honest, sincere, conscientious, faithful and welfare oriented candidates. In this way, in a democratic nation, people democratically contribute in building modern India.



8

Framing of Constitution and its Features**Constitution means**

‘Any systematic collection of rules designed to govern a country’s regime is known as Constitution’

Importance

Constitution is the basic and most important document. The laws of the country are based on the Constitution. The Country’s Constitution and the Constitutional laws should be subject to relevant provisions. The Constitution is superior to all the laws of the country. Constitution involves periodically changing requirements of the people’s aspirations, expectations, interests as well as the emotions which are high. That’s the reason Constitution is known as a live and a basic document.

Process of Framing the Constitution

Before independence, the British Government on 25th March 1946 handed the duty to the Cabinet Mission of three members to find a solution to the questions of India’s Independence. On the basis of recommendation of the Cabinet Mission, the Constituent Assembly was constituted and the structure of the Constitution was decided.

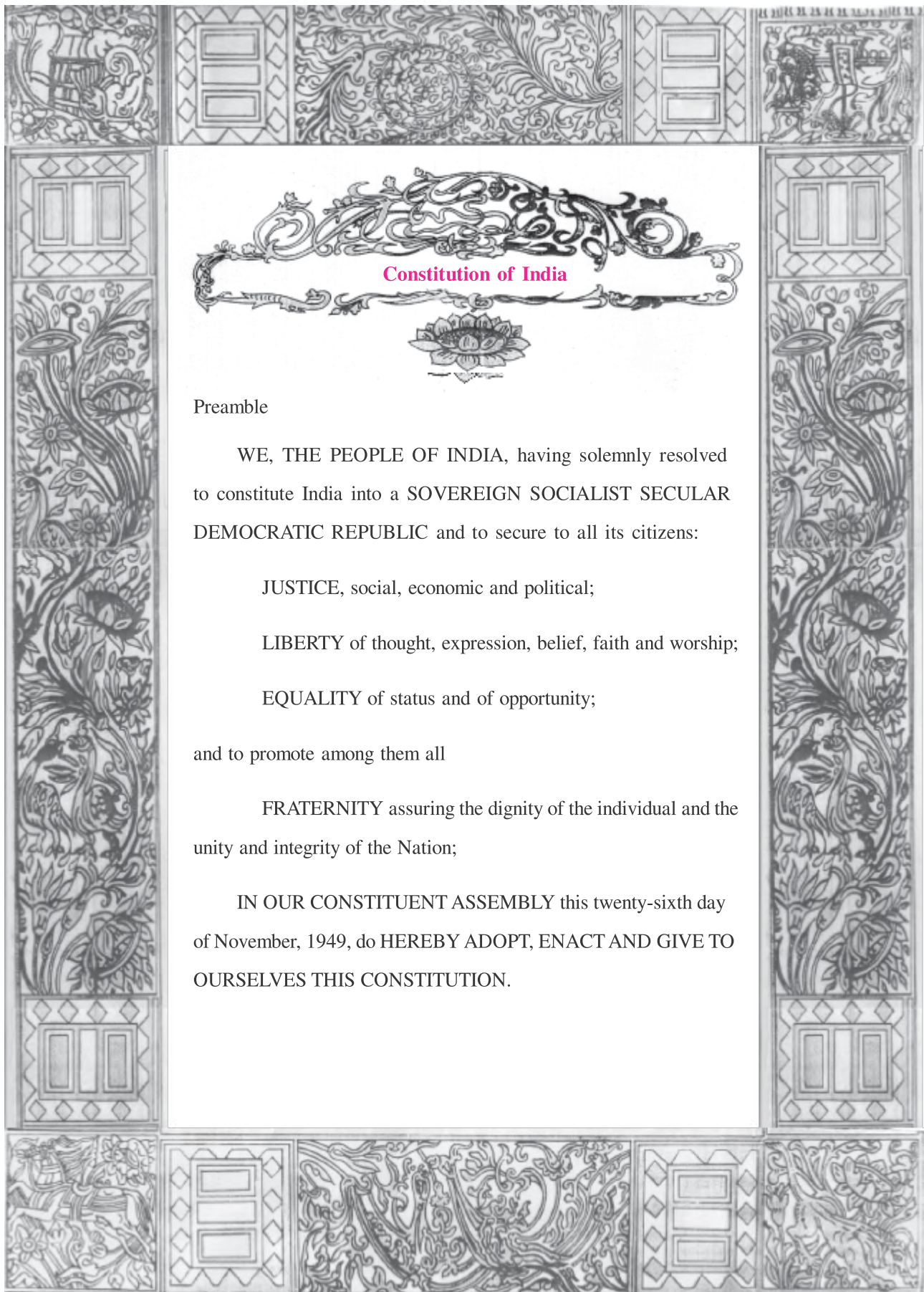
Constituent Assembly comprised 385 members in which various members from different religion, caste, gender and people from various geographical diversification, political representatives and experts from various sectors were included. Jawaharlal Nehru, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, Maulana Abdul Kalam Azad, Shyamprasad Mukerjee, H.P. Modi, H.V. Kamanth, Frank Anthony, Kanaiyalal Munshi, Krishna Swami Iyer, Baldev Singh and women representatives Sarojini Naidu, VijayLakshmi Pandit etc. were in the Constituent Assembly. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was the President of the Constituent Assembly. A drafting committee was appointed to draft the Constitution under the Chairmanship of Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar.

The Constitution Assembly met for 166 sessions spread over a period of 2 years, 11 months and 17 days. Members of the Assembly has discussed threadbare, each and every detail of its provisions keeping in concern the matters of Constitution of different countries. In this Constitution there are 295 Articles and 8 Appendices, after amendments with 395 Articles and 9 Appendices, the Constitution was framed. On 26th November 1949, the Constitution was unanimously passed in the Constituent Assembly. On 26th January 1950, Constitution of India came into existence and India was declared a ‘Republic Nation’. Thereafter every year on 26th January we celebrate Republic Day with national fervour. In the Indian Constitution, we have four lions as ‘National Emblem’ and national slogan ‘Satyamev Jayate’ (Truth will always win). The Constitution provides for citizenship, rights and duties of the people directive principles of the state policy, union-state relations, elections and emergency provisions. Thus, the Constitution of India is the most detailed and elaborated national document.

What is Preamble ?

Preamble is the core and important part of Constitution. Indian Constitution begins with Preamble. The words written in the Preamble highlights the soul of the Constitution.

The words inscribed in the Preamble are given below :



The Preamble remained unchanged till 1976. In 1976, the words 'Socialist', 'Secular', 'Unity' and 'Integrity of the Nation' were added.

The Preamble verbalise the fundamental objectives of the Constiitution, aims, ideas and principles. Therefore the Preamble straightway gives a clear insight of the 'Rule of Welfare'. The Preamble reflects Constitution framers' psyche.

Importance of Preamble

The Preamble as a soul of the Constitution is also an important necessity. To understand the framing of any law or its interpretation, Preamble gives proper guidance. To understand the policy behind the framing of any law, Preamble plays an important role. The Preamble is a useful tool to avoid the trouble in the interpretation of the Constitution.

When any ambiguity or obscure details in law arises, Preamble helps in understanding and interpreting the law. Thus, Preamble serves as a compass to understand the provisions of Constitutional law.

Preamble is nation's unity, integrity and is the standard crust of brotherhood among citizens who are having noble sentiments and ideals. Preamble is backed by high ideals and goals.

Pillars of the Preamble

The words inscribed in the Preamble are : We, the people of India SOVEREIGN, SOCIALIST, SECULAR, DEMOCRATIC, REPUBLIC, JUSTICE, LIBERTY, FRATERNITY AND EQUALITY. Here we will study the following three main pillars of the Preamble.

(1) Democracy : The ultimate sovereignty of power is with the people according to Indian constitution. There is no particular regime of any one particular person instead it is with the people.

Democracy, the word, is derived from Greek word 'Demos' means people and 'Kratos' means power. Country's power is not within a group of people instead it is within the people of the country. Democratic State administration is such an arrangement in which there is equal justice for people to social, economical and political and having equal rights of participation.

In democratic India people elect their leaders through their choice by casting vote to represent those leaders in the Parliament and thereafter assuming the post of Prime Minister and his/her Cabinet. Executives do not have absolute power. They are given specific time-limit. Similarly, the voters elect State and Local level Government. Hence, Democracy means by the people, for the people and of the people. Cabinet consists members of Parliament. Cabinet of Ministers is responsible to the Parliament. Any citizen of India who possess required Constitutional Eligibility can contest the election. Ministerial positions are not acquired hereditary. Each elected Government has 5 years of tenure. This Government works under the principles of Constitution and therefore it is known as 'Responsible Government'. The democratic Government is based on liberty, equality and feeling of fraternity and continuously work to achieve these goals. The Constitution

disseminates the power to people to cast their vote according to their free will and thereby instills confidence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of Democratic India renders Fundamental Rights, Principles for Political directions, Parliament, Member of Assembly, Independent and impartial justice and election commission are those provisions which make our country democratic in every means.

Adult Suffrage means the citizen above 18 years of age can cast his/her vote to one's choice of leaders without discriminating caste, creed, religion, language, gender, education, and income or birth place. But it is essential that the citizens are enlisted in the Electoral list.

(2) Socialistic : In the year 1976 by 42nd Indian Constitution Amendment, Constitution of India added in the 42nd amendment, the word 'Socialist'. Most of the provisions in the Constitution of India directly or indirectly show 'Social Revolution' which brought social and economic equality and furthered the aim of 'Welfare State'.

The principle of socialistic pattern directs social, economic and political equality for citizens as given in the Preamble. It is now regarded as a prime feature of the State. It reflects the fact that India is committed to secure social, economic and political justice for all its people. India stands for abolishing all forms of exploitation as well as for securing equitable distribution of income, resources and wealth. Any one particular person should not have power over all assets instead everyone should have equal opportunity by getting facilities and provisions from society and thereby eliminating the discrimination of rich and poor. Therefore we can say that, Constitution of India is a socialistic document.

(3) Secularism : In the year 1976 by 42nd Indian Constitution Amendment the word 'Secular' was inserted. India is a secular country. India can never become one particular religious country as per the provisions of the Constitution. India does not follow any particular religion. So the country never promotes any religious activity. The country cannot involve any secular activity with religious activity. The citizen of the country has a freedom to choose his /her religion. The country can not discriminate a citizen on religious basis. Equal job opportunities and political rights to the citizens are given without any religious discrimination. In this way, Secularism is the basic foundation and mandatory feature of the Constitution.

'Sarv Dharm Samdristi' and 'Sarv Dharm Sambhav' are the principles incorporated in the Constitution. So no particular religion would be encouraged in any states. There is no prohibition on any citizen to propagate his/her religious belief, trust and faith.

Basic Features Of the Constitution

The Constitution which came into force on 26th January, 1950 is considered as the largest, extensive and detailed written document : Given below is the basic and salient features of it:

(1) Written document : Except Britain and Israel, India alongwith other nations of the world have their Constitution in written form. Considering the social, geographical diversified circumstances and pre-historical notions the Constituent Assembly has kept the drafted Constitution in written form.

(2) Size of the Constitution : Indian Constitution is divided in 22 sections comprising 395 articles and 8 appendices (now 12) .The Constitution comprises provisions for State Administration and States' inter relations, fundamental rights, principles for political policies, judiciary, election commission, government institutions, minorities, scheduled caste and deprived groups. Therefore our Constitution of India is the largest, extensive and detailed written document, compared to other Constitutions.

(3) Single Citizenship : In America dual citizenship is given ; one for United States of America and another for State citizenship. But in India there is only single citizenship irrespective of any region or State of the country. Only citizens of Jammu-Kashmir have dual citizenship; one for India and another for the state of Jammu-Kashmir.

(4) The Centre with strong Federal Structure : India is a Union of States. There is nowhere any reference of the word 'Federal' in the Constitution. 'Union of States' is the sentence used for India. By the use of word , 'Union' , a permanent and irreversible relationship between Union and its Component States is indicated. India is a Union of States and no State has right to secede it .Thus India is a Union of States yet it has some elements of Federal Government. In Indian Federation, there are two sets of Governments; the Union Government and the State Governments. The Constitution has clearly marked areas of functioning for both the kinds of governments.

The Constitution demarcates the powers of the Central and the State governments into different Lists of Subjects.

(i) Union List : Union List comprises 97 Subjects. Subjects of national importance like defence, foreign affairs, atomic energy, banking, railway, communication, post and telegraph are included in the Union list.

(ii) State List : The State List comprises of 66 subjects. The State List comprises of those important subjects on which the State Legislature House can pass Laws. Subjects like law and order, State government institutions, agriculture and irrigation, health, land, inter-state trade and commerce are included. If there is a failure of the law and order in the State ,the Union Government with consent or against the will of the State can send Reserved Police Force.

(iii) Concurrent List : In addition to this, the Constitution provides for a third list that is called the Concurrent List. which consist of subjects of common concern, both to the Centre and the State Governments. The Central and State Government can pass laws on these Subjects. The Concurrent List has 47 subjects. This List includes subjects like criminal and civil procedure, marriage and divorce, education, economic planning, trade union etc.

Residuary Powers

The subjects which are not specifically allotted to Union or State are included in 'Residuary Powers'. Matters that are not included in the division of powers are known as residuary powers. The Central Government is given the power to legislate on these 'residuary' subjects.

The financial distribution of resources is done between Union Government and State Governments. excise and custom , export-import, income tax all these major taxes are decided by Central Government while sales tax , revenue tax , entertainment tax , educational tax which are having meagre financial resources are decided by State Government.

(5) Unified Arrangement during crisis : There are three provisions for Emergencies in Constitution of India.

(i) National emergency can be declared at the time of war, external attack, or armed rebellion.

(ii) Due to law and order breakdown, the State cannot function according to the Constitution, so Constitutional Emergency is declared.

(iii) Due to increase in prices there is monetary value erosion at that, financial emergency is declared.

The Central government has been given more powers to deal with these emergencies. At the time of emergency, India is almost turned into a unitary system.

(6) Parliamentary System : India has a parliamentary system of Governance. In a parliamentary system, the Parliament is a supreme authority representing people. The Legislature at the Union is the Parliament .The Parliament is bicameral means it has two houses: Upper House and Lower House. Upper House is called RajyaSabha. Lower House is known as Lok Sabha. Though the Government is carried on in the name of the President at the Union and the Governor in the States, actual administration is carried by the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister at the Union and the Chief Minister in the States. The Council of Ministers is responsible to the Legislature that comprises representatives of the people. The President selects 12 people who are experts and experienced from various fields for RajyaSabha. RajyaSabha is permanent house in which one-third members retire every two years the same number of member for election. Thus each member has six years of tenure in RajyaSabha (Council of States). The powers of RajyaSabha are less compared to the Lok Sabha which is special, superior and decisive. Rajyasabha cannot be completely dissolved.

(7) Independent and Impartial Judiciary : The Constitution has provided for the establishment of an independent and impartial judiciary. There is Supreme Court at the top, then there are High courts at states and under its jurisdiction are the District Courts at district level and at the taluka level there are Local and Special courts. The Judgements of Supreme Court are binding to all the sub-ordinate Courts of the Nations. In case of conflict between the Union and State Governments, matters relating to Constitution and interpretation of Statutes, the final decision is vested with Supreme Court. The Supreme Court is the protector and guardian of the Constitution.

(8) Amendments in Constitution : Compared to other countries' Constitution, Constitution of India is dynamic. Constitution can be amended as and when required. Constitutional provisions can be amended three ways :

(i) Amendments can be made by a simple majority of members present and voting in the Parliament.

(ii) Certain amendments require a special majority, that is $\frac{2}{3}$ (two-third) majority of members present and voting.

(iii) Concerning the Union-State relations, the special majority that is $\frac{2}{3}$ (two-third) and the concurrence not less than 50% of the State Legislature is required.

If there is any amendment to be made in the inter-relations between Union, State structure or in supreme judiciary, then half of the States from the total States have to give consent. Judgement of Court can also bring amendment by the Parliament. There will be no change in the basic structure of the Constitution. Simple majority in Parliament can bring change in the amendments of the Constitution, that's why the Constitution is known as the most inconstant and flexible document but at certain cases it is not amendable by simple majority. Without the majority consent of states its not amendable .. Then too the mixture of both makes the Constitution.

(9) Universal Adult Suffrage : In India, we have a system of Adult Suffrage which is flexible. According to that any citizen who is above 18 years of age and above possesses right to vote in the elections of Parliament, Legislative Assemblies or Local Self-Government Bodies, without any discrimination of education, property and economic standard.

(10) Secularism : We have discussed earlier about secularism in the Preamble. In the Constitution India has been declared as a secular state. People of different religions reside in India. Therefore the State cannot discriminate any citizen on the basis of religion. No citizen can be given special rights or cannot be deprived with certain rights. The State has to be absolutely impartial and neutral in respect of religion. Only secular state can offer proper or equal treatment towards all citizens. Secularism means that the state doesn't interfere in matters of religion, or is biased to any specific religion. The State has to be secular and indifferent. Followers of every religion are free to follow and practice their religion of choice.

(11) Judicial review : Judicial review is the chief characteristic of the Constitution. Judicial review administers the working of Union and State within jurisdiction. Without disrespecting the powers of Parliament, the Constitution has made an effort to harmonize the principles of judicial review. Parliamentary amendments, external orders, ordinances, and judicial judgement are given for Judicial Review. If the court finds any indiscrepancy in the external orders, ordinances or judicial judgements it can stopped by declaring them unconstitutional.

(12) Fundamental Rights and Duties : Fundamental rights are conferred to the people of India by the Constitution to live a dignified life. The most valuable capital of our country is in the overall development of nation which further lies in the Fundamental Duties and Rights. Right to Constitutional Remedies and for the children 6 to 14 yerars of age Right to Educate are also made available.

(13) Directive Principles of State Policy : Protection of people, security and welfare should be carried out by the States. These principles provide directions for State governances and policy making, so they are called as Directive Principle.

(14) Provision for Backward sections and Tribes : To uplift and include backward sections and tribes and deprived class in the main stream, there are specific provisions in the Constitution. Reserve seats are allocated in Legislature and Local Self Governing Bodies election to provide representation. Reservation Quota has been provided for admission in educational institutes and government jobs in proportion to their population to provide equal opportunity. Children of backward sections and tribes are given scholarships, basic amenities and waived fees which come under 'optimistic policies' and 'shielding policies' as per provision in the Constitution.

Self Study

1. Answer the following questions in brief :

- (1) Which ideals are stated in the Preamble of Indian Constitution ?
- (2) What is Adult Suffrage ?
- (3) Indian Constitution is federal –discuss.
- (4) State the characteristics of Parliamentary Government.
- (5) What is Unified Judicial System ?
- (6) Explain the provisions for Constitutional Amendments.
- (7) Political equality is incomplete without social and economic equality.

2. Explain the statements :

- (1) Preamble is an extract of Indian Constitution.
- (2) Preamble is the key to understanding of the amendments of the Constitution.
- (3) Preamble serves as compass.
- (4) Indian Constitution is the inclusion of federal unitary.
- (5) India is secular country.
- (6) India is a democratic republic country.
- (7) India is integral and indivisible federation.
- (8) Constitution of India is the most extensive and detailed written document in the world.

3. Explain the below given terminology of words :

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| (1) Dual Citizenship | (2) Parliamentary System | (3) Responsible Government | (4) Union List |
| (5) State List | (6) Concurrent List | (7) Residuary Power | (8) Socialist |
| (9) Judicial Review | (10) Democracy | | |

4. Choose the correct option from the given below options :

- (1) When was the Indian constitution framework completed ?
 (A) In the year 1948 (b) In the year 1949 (C) In the year 1950 (D) In the year 1947
- (2) How many subjects are there in Central List ?
 (A) 66 (B) 47 (C) 97 (D) 87
- (3) How many Articles and Appendices are there in Indian Constitution ?
 (A) 285-11 (B) 395-12 (C) 495-13 (D) 345-8
- (4) Who was the Chairman of Constitutional Framework Committee ?
 (A) Kaniyalal Munshi (B) Rajendra Prasad (C) Shyama Prasad (D) Sardar Patel
- (5) When Indian Constition came into existence ?
 (A) 26th Nov, 1949 (B) 26th Jan, 1950 (C) 15th August, 1947 (D) 9th Dec, 1946
- (6) How many members were there in the Formation of Constitutional Committee ?
 (A) 389 (B) 545 (C) 250 (D) 166
- (7) India is a republic country because...
 (A) it is a sovereign country (B) It is a democratic country
 (C) Prime Minister is elected for certain tenure (D) People have religious freedom

5. Write a detailed note on salient features of Constitution, parliamentary method, federal and sole planning, federal and free Judiciary, constitutional provisions, judicial review.**Activity**

- Gather photocopy of Constitution of India for supportive referential chapter for understanding Indian Constitution directly.(get a photocopy from well-known library)
- Prepare points of comparison related to Constitution of countries like America, India and Britain
- Prepare project on latest amendments in Indian Constitution.
- Arrange a talk on the topic Constitution and Fundamental Rights and Duties by Eminent Advocate or Expert Parent or Professor of a Law College.
- Prepare a pictorial wall poster on Framers of the Constitution.
- Arrange a mock election for class committee, class representatives and general secretary at school level. Provide training for counting of votes.

Introduction

In the previous chapter we have studied Indian Constitution, Preamble and Important Pillars as well as the specific characteristics. In this Chapter, we will study about other important characteristics of Constitution that is Fundamental Rights, Fundamental Duties and Directive Principles of State Policy.

Human Rights

Human Rights are those rights which not only give a person his/her basic existence but also overall development in which society helps to construct an environment which enables him/her to grow. In every democratic country, the citizens are conferred with basic rights. A person is not discriminated on the basis of caste, can experience the basic rights, the protection of these rights are assured by society and nation as well. The person by his birth, owns rights, which are his /her basic rights which are known as Human Rights.

United Nations General Assembly has declared Human Rights on 10th of December, 1948 and 10th December is celebrated as 'Human Rights Day'. From the global announcement of Human Rights, certain basic and important Human rights are added in the Constitution of India and thereby these rights are protected in a dignified way. Thus, those Human Rights which are included by Constitution of India are known as Fundamental Rights.

These Human rights proclaim the human beings to live in a dignified way. For the existence of human being the basic needs (Food, Clothes, Shelter, Education and Health) should be received in a dignified and respectable way. Democratic country allows its citizens to enjoy equal rights for multifaceted development. The State guarantees such a conducive environment wherein one has protection of Fundamental Rights, a true identity of democratic system.

Fundamental Rights

The nation's stability, protection of citizen's freedom and democracy are protected through fundamental rights :

(1) Right to Equality (2) Right to Freedom (3) Right against Exploitation (4) Right to Freedom of Religion (5) Cultural and Educational Rights (6) Right to Constitutional Remedies.

(1) Right to Equality : 'Equality before Law' and 'Equal protection of Law' are included in Right to Equality. This fundamental right is the major foundation of all other rights and privileges guaranteed to Indian citizens. It is one of the chief guarantees of the Constitution of India. Thus, it is imperative that every citizen of India has easy access to the courts to exercise his/her Right to Equality. According to this Right, no person shall be shown favouritism on the basis of colour, caste, creed, language, etc. Law is equal to all, i.e., from the peon to the Prime Minister if they act against Law, they are treated equally and are bound to the general court of Law. However, the President and Governors have certain privileges..

In each and every circumstance the Law should prevail equally. There should be no discrimination or specific favouritism shown to any particular person or class. Every Law should be equally disseminated. Every person shall have equal admittance to public places like shops, restaurants, hotels, public entertainment places, have equal access to roads and lakes and use of public wells and bathing ghats. However, the State has the right to make any special arrangement for women and children or for the development of any socially or educationally backward class or scheduled castes or scheduled tribes. No citizen shall be discriminated on the basis of race, caste, religion, creed, descent or place of birth in respect of any Government services and higher education under the State. In matters of state public services equal opportunities have to be offered to all the citizens. However, the state is given permission to make decision regarding/ required qualifications for said services.

As a guarantee to social justice and personal dignity, untouchability is abolished and its practice in any form is prohibited and a punishable offence.

Titles and epithets which create artificial discriminations in the society have been removed. The adjectives used before names like Sir, Diwanji, Raibhadur are removed. After independence the Government in order to felicitate special contributions and achievements of individuals in various fields gives special awards like Bharatratna, Padmavibushan, Padmabhushan, Padmashree. 'Paramveer Chatra' is awarded in military services. Adjectives like General, Major, Chief Marshall, Field Marshall are added before names in military services which is not considered as a violation of Right to Equality. The aim of this Right is to form an equitable society and thereby establish 'Rule of Law' in India.

To provide specific services to different types of groups or classes, there can be different types of provisions under law for examples, there are different laws for Advocates, Doctors, Teachers, Insurance Agencies, Women, Juveniles. The principle of 'Equal Pay for Equal work' is also a part of this article.

(2) Right to Freedom : The Constitution of India provides the citizens of India, six types of Freedom which are as under : (1) Freedom of Speech and Expression (2) to assemble peacefully without Arms (3) to form associations or unions (4) to move freely throughout the territory of India (5) to reside and settle in any part of the territory of India (6) to practise any profession, or to carry on any occupation, trade or business.

These rights are of utmost importance for the overall development of personality and expressions of Indian Citizens, for harmonious working of democracy, and a healthy life-style. Any individual cannot exercise these freedom autonomously or irresponsibly. The State can control and limit this right to freedom if they go against the welfare, peace and security of the society. This has been clearly mentioned in the Constitution. It has been stated in the Constitution how the rights are exercised.

Indian citizens have been given the Freedom of Speech and Expression. This can be expressed either orally, verbally and through gestures. But that does not provide for exercising these rights in unlimited and unrestrained manner. Certain necessary control and limitation have been stated in the Constitution. The State can put required control through law and order for maintaining the unity and integrity of India, safety of the state, for amicable relation with foreign nations, public management and public peace, compromise and safety, morality, discipline, contempt of court defamation and provoking violence for crime. It is the authority of the Judiciary whether these many limitations are appropriate or inappropriate. The purpose behind the freedom of Press through which ideas and opinions put forth for public welfare has not been separately mentioned. It can be included in the Right to Expression.

The latest amendment of 2009 in Constitution of India confers Free and Compulsory Primary Education for the children between 6 to 14 years. If a person is not convicted for a crime, then he cannot be sentenced to punishment or more punishment than the one prescribed by the law, cannot be given the punishment more than once, cannot be given to the same convicted person. No individual can be deprived of his life and liberty except by the procedure of law. No one can be arrested without being told the ground for such arrest. If arrested, the person has the right to defend himself/herself by a lawyer of his/her choice. An arrested person has to be brought before the nearest magistrate within 24 hours. Without the permission no individual can be kept

in custody. As per the Prohibition Act, the person under arrest will not be applicable to the aforesaid matters.

Preventive Detention: If the State anticipates any criminal deed or activity from any person then as a precautionary measure that person can be detained by the State under an Preventive Detention Act. . The purpose of this Act is not to punish a convict, but to stop him from doing any criminal activity against State, Society or any individual. Under this Act, a person can be detained not more than 3 months. The Detention or order can be cancelled based on the opinion of the Judges of Supreme Court or Members of the Advisory Board. The State can decide the term of detention.

(3) Right Against Exploitation : The main objective of the Constitution is to see any person does not suffer exploitation at the hands of other person and exploitation free society is established. That is objective of the Constitution through this Right. Human Trafficking, drudgery, slavery and forced labour are banned. The violation of this Right is a punishable offence. Illegal trade of children and women, forced labour or imposed slavery, work without pay and the old drudgery system has to be ended through this right. To take work from any person without paying them or paying them less than minimum wages, forced or imposed labour is a punishable act.

Any child under the age of 14 cannot be made to work in a factory, mine, or any dangerous profession, garage, hotel or cannot be employed as a house-hold servant.

Under the Prohibition of Child Labour Act, all these are punishable offences.

Mandatory services can be sort, from any person for the purpose of public welfare of the State Military Services in any fields irrespective of religion, gender, caste or class with or without remuneration.

(4) Right to Freedom of Religion : Any Citizen of India can follow any religion of choice, can promote and propagate the same is mentioned in the provision of the Constitution of India.

But this right is to be enjoyed within permissible limits so that it does not affect the freedom of public Administration, Morality and Health of the society. The religious gatherings, offerings or prayers are not included in this.

The State of India does not have any religion of its own or the Indian State is not run as per the principles of any religion or sect. The State cannot interfere in the religious matters or religious beliefs of any group. The religious groups have been given the freedom to establish any religious organisation and can manage and administer them for religious and philanthropic aims. The State cannot use the funds collected through public taxes or public fund for the benefit and development of any specific religious and sect. The Educational Institution running on Government Grant cannot impart religious education or compel the students to participate in any religious education or attend any religious meet.

(5) Cultural and Educational Rights : People of various religions ,various languages and cultures live in India. The people of India have a right to preserve their language, script, cultural identity and ethnicity. Any educational institution which rely on the Government Grant cannot deny admission on the grounds of religion, caste, creed, language or any other reason.

If any individual appeals to vote on the grounds of religion, caste or language then it is considered as a malpractise as per Act 123 (3). Any of the State can frame a law and provide the right to its citizen to form and manage any of the educational institute based on cultural or linguistic minority. The State shall not discriminate in giving Educational Grants or Educational Scholarship from the State Fund to any of the linguistic or religious minority institutions. If the State desires to take over or confiscate the property of minority

institutions then it can do so only after giving proper returns. In this way, important provisions in context of Education Institution have been made in the Constitution.

(6) Right to Constitutional Remedies : No matter, how many laws are framed or how many provisions are made for the Fundamental Rights if these are not implemented well, then there remains no meaning of such freedom or right. Therefore, a provision has been made in the Constitution for the implementation of these rights and under it, a writ in the Supreme Court can be made for the violation of the Fundamental Right. This Right has been accepted as the Right to Constitutional Remedies. The Supreme Court plays an important role in protecting the Fundamental Rights. And for this, if the Court finds it necessary then it can give orders, instruction or decree. The Apex Court is vested with the powers given by the Constitution. Nobody can oppose it, if any person puts a complain against any State for the violation of any Fundamental Right then the Supreme Court can exercise its right.

Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar has considered this right as 'Soul of the Constitution'. The Parliament can hand over the powers of giving such an order to any of the court. If the State Legislative Assembly frames any Law which violates the Fundamental Rights or not in Congruence of it then the Supreme Court can stop the State. Thus, this Right provides an opportunity to any of the citizen to approach court for the violation of Fundamental Rights.

The Constitution provides the Fundamental Rights to the Indian Citizens. These Rights are given against the Governments. (Centre And State). The Fundamental Rights are applicable to all these citizens at all the times, but can be suspended during the time of Emergency. Any State cannot form any laws which take away the Fundamental Rights of these citizens.

Fundamental Duties

The people of India were more aware of their Rights and Duties since ancient times. Just as the citizens are given various Fundamental Rights, various Fundamental Duties were incorporated by Constitutional amendment in 1976. The Fundamental Duty aims to inculcate love for nation, national integrity, various high ideals and value awareness among its citizens. Thereby helping in developing the nation. Every citizen of India should contribute towards the protection of Nation's unity, integrity and sovereignty, so that there remains peace, security, communal harmony and accord. The Fundamental Duties are given on the first page of Textbook.

(1) to abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and National Anthem;

(2) to cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom;

(3) to uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;

(4) to defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so.

(5) to promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women.

(6) to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture;

(7) to protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wild life, and to have compassion for living creatures;

(8) to develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;

(9) to safeguard public property and to abjure violence;

(10) to strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement;

(11) Who is a parent or guardian to provide opportunities for education to his child or, as the case may be, ward between the age of six and fourteen years.

6th January is celebrated as 'Fundamental Duties Day' in India. Of all these Duties, some Duty are backed by the law. The person violating it, can be sentenced. A teacher should make efforts so that the students follow the Duties and they become aware and conscientious. It is our Duty and Responsibility as a citizen to see that various social evils and customs prevailing in the society should be eradicated like untouchability, drudgery, child-labour, women exploitation, dowry, female-foeticide, ill-customs, superstition. These Duties are directive in conveying us that what as a sensible and aware citizen must do. If citizen propogates the importance and utilization of Fundamental Duties then future citizens develop the feeling of national responsibility, international brotherhood, just and exploitation free society.

Directive Principles of State Policy

Directive Principles of the State have been incorporated in the Chapter-IV of the Constitution. The objective of the Directive Principles of State Policy is to guide the present and future, Centre and State Governments in the Policy-making in various policy related field. These Principles are Directive. The State is not bound to fulfill them. But its the moral responsibility of the State to keep these principles in the Centre for framing any policy. The main objective of this principle is to see that any political, social and economic justice should be available to all, Such a social structure should be established. For the fulfillment of the objectives and aims of the State, the Principle serve as a guideline. There is no provision in the Constitution to implement these Principles of law. These Fundamental Principles do not provide any legal support or legal right. Then also the framing and administering the laws of the States these are Fundamentals. Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar, "To rule the regime these principles are the foundations." It means an attempt to establish political democracy in our Constitution. Political Democracy is incomplete without social and economical democracy.

The Indian Constitution has included Directive Principles of State Policy in the four sections of the Amendment. The kind of country that we want to create, the kind of society we want to construct, that vision is reflected in these Directive Policies. The Directive principles are actually directions given by the Constitution to the Union and State governments to adopt such policies that would help to establish an unbiased society in our country.

The primary aim of these principles is to establish a social system based on social, economic and political justice. These Principles are about the implementation of the objectives and ideals presented in the Preamble. These principles are not included in the Constitution of India. These Principles do not serve legal rights or legal backing or legal utilization. For proper administration of the State, these principles are channelized. These principles incorporate such rights as are required for the overall development of mankind.

These Directive Principles are divided into various sections.

(1) Principles related to Economic Policy : For the modification of Economic Policy, there are certain principles which are given below :

- (i) Equal distribution of wealth and resources among all classes for the welfare of the citizens.
- (ii) Assets and production of resources should not be distributed to certain group or section, this should be administered by the State
- (iii) Equal pay for equal work for both men and women
- (iv) Provision for good health for labourers working at places should be created. Because of financial constraints the men, women and young children working at unhygienic places or where health matters are retorted should not be allowed to happen.

- (v) State should promote co-operation in administration of industrial units by labourers.
- (vi) Protection of children, youth against exploitation and against moral and material abandonment and to live in a healthy and dignified environment, these principles should be developed by State.
- (vii) Relief and leave at the time of delivery should be provided to women. Worker's Insurance, Bonus, Maternity leave, Gratuity, and other legal rights should be included in the policy.
- (viii) To organize agricultural and animal husbandry on modern and scientific lines and to prohibit the slaughter of cows and other useful milk-producing cattle. A draft should be drawn for the livestock breed like donkeys, bullocks, cows for halting the slaughter.
- (ix) Equal legal rights to all. State should organize free legal services to the desired citizens who are financially feeble as well as incapable in getting so.

(2) Principles related to Social policy : Weaker sections of the society that is the Schedule Class, Schedule Tribe, and backward class, educational and economic rights to be conferred which should be taken in concern by the State. They should be protected against social exploitation and injustice.

Uniform Civil Code should be the concern for all the citizens of the country, thereby dispersing and administering justice to all which should be taken in concern by the State. Steps should be taken for social justice in matters of Marriage, divorces, adoptions, juvenile, assets and properties by the State.

The State should make provisions for the support and education in matters: right to employment, old age, illness or inauspicious situations, poverty etc.

(3) Principles related to the International and Political Policies :

- (i) Panchayati Raj should be established by the State. For which proper leadership, officers and financial aid should be provided to conduct the work in free way.
- (ii) The State should separate its services from corporate mindedness and it should be in liberty so that Judges can be impartial , fearless and courageous in rendering judgements.
- (iii) The State should make attempts to maintain international peace, security, to establish fair relation between nations and to increase respect of international law.

(4) Principles related to Education and Cultural Policies : Free and compulsory education for the children belonging to the age group between 6 to 14 years of age is mentioned in the Constitution and it was the fundamental right to education.

To preserve and protect state heritage, artefacts, monuments, cultural places, art and buildings. The State should protect these cultural heritage places from distortion, robbery, transitioning, disposal and deterioration. The State should have the aim of preserving the cultural and historical legacies.

(5) Principles related to Health Policies :

- (i) Public wellness and hygiene should be provided along with provision for better nutrition and health amenities for the people by the state.
- (ii) Prohibition on harmful drugs, harmful soft drinks and drugs should be done by the state. These should be further banned as it will create health hazard for the public.
- (iii) To preserve the environment with latest amendments, thereby taking care of the forest and vegetation should be the policy of the state.

- (iv) Hygienic environment should be maintained in the working areas of labourers. They should have social and cultural development at the time of leisure. Entertainment provision should be there to maintain mental health. These provisions should be kept in concern by the state.

Thus, these principles provide guidance to the state to take lead towards establishment of equal, just and social order without any exploitation. The Directive Principles envisage future society, they guide us to the directions that we should go and lead us to our destination. The upliftment of society and protection of society will be taken care by the State. Fundamental Rights limit the State leadership while Directive Principles extend state leadership. Fundamental rights make the existence of Democracy, while Directive Principles of society and finance imparts aims for inter-relation of democracy. There is no opposition between them. Both of them complete each other.

Self –Study

1. Answer the following questions given below :

- (1) Write in brief about Fundamental Rights being incorporated in the Constitution.
- (2) Describe the importance of Directive Principles of State Policy.
- (3) Explain the importance of Fundamental Rights.
- (4) What is reasonable control and limitation ?
- (5) Write about Preventive Detention.
- (6) Mention Fundamental duties as mentioned in the Constitution
- (7) Mention the rights under Minority Provision.

2. Write short notes on :

- (1) Right to Equality
- (2) Right to Constitutional Remedies
- (3) Right to freedom
- (4) Right against Exploitation
- (5) Directive Principles for Economic Policies
- (6) Directive Principles for Political and International Relations

3. Give reasons to the following statements :

- (1) One can go to the court of law to seek protection against violation of Fundamental right.
- (2) Right to Constitutional remedies is like the ‘Constitutional Soul’.
- (3) Freedom cannot be unlimited or absolute.
- (4) Directive Principles of Political Policies are the pre-conditions for the utilization of Fundamental Rights.
- (5) A formation of society without exploitation is the important aim of the Constitution.
- (6) Directive Principles and Fundamental rights are not against each other instead they complete each other.
- (7) Duties and Rights are the sides of the same coin.
- (8) Child labour is a punishable offence.
- (9) For the implementation of Directive Principles one cannot resort to court of Law.
- (10) Directive Principles are the foundation for the rule of a regime.

- (11) Without social and economic democracy, Political democracy cannot be achieved.
 (12) Preservation of Cultural and Historical heritage is the Fundamental Duty of everyone.

4. Choose the Correct Options from the below given Options :

- (1) Which 'right' is considered as a 'Soul' by Dr. Ambedkar ?
 (A) Right to freedom (B) Right to Equality
 (C) Cultural and Educational Rights (D) Rights to Constitutional Remedies
- (2) According to Whom, Directive Principles of State policy are the principles foundation ?
 (A) Narendra Modi (B) Jawaharlal Nehru
 (C) Dr. Rajendra Prasad (D) Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar
- (3) A Person detained under Preventive Detention can be kept in detention for how much time ?
 (A) 24 hours (B) 6 months
 (C) 3 months (D) life-long
- (4) Children under which age group have the Right of Free and Compulsory Education ?
 (A) 6 to 14 years (B) Upto 3 years
 (C) Above 14 years (D) 18 years of age
- (5) Children under which age group are restricted from dangerous profession ?
 (A) Below 14 years of age (B) Below 18 years of age
 (C) 6-14 years (D) Above 28 years of age
- (6) Which behaviour is considered as social stigma of society ?
 (A) Untouchability (B) Child labour
 (C) Dowry (D) Superstition

Activity

- Arrange a talk on the topic – Whether our Constitution is successful in protecting Fundamental rights. Plan a Mock Parliament.
- Celebrate Awareness for Voters and organize quiz.
- Conduct a panel discussion by inviting member of Parliament or the official of Human Rights Commission while celebrating Human Rights day.
- A Rally having slogans to make aware of the surrounding related to fundamental rights and directive principles on Ambedkar Jayanti or Gandhi Jayanti
- Which is more important Fundamental rights or Directive principles? – On Human rights Day arrange a children parliament for teachers and students.
- Make a survey in your area to know whether there is child labour in and around the area.
- Conduct rally, drawing competition and render application to the authorities on the prohibition of Child Labour on 14th of November 'Children's Day.
- Conduct a project or make handwritten points on the life-sketch of Dr. Ambedkar.

●

There are three organs of the government. The Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary. We shall study in detail the formation of all these three organs of the Government, their powers, their functions and their interpersonal relations.

One of the main objectives of the nation is to maintain law and order and thereby achieve the welfare of the nation, and at the same time to nurture and to protect the freedom and fundamental rights of the citizens. For the progressive development of the state it is necessary that all the three organs of the Government viz the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary work in mutual unity, co-operation and co-ordination, so that the Government can run its administration effectively and efficiently. The Legislature frames the laws, the Executive implements the framed laws and the Judiciary maintains law and order by punishing the people who violate the law.

The Legislature as per the Constitution of India consists of a Parliament at the Centre and Legislative Assemblies at the State level. The Executive as per the Constitution of India consists of the President, the Prime Minister and Cabinet Minister and their administrative system at the centre and the Governor, the Chief Minister and his cabinet and administrative system at the State level. Whereas in the Judiciary the Supreme court is at the top, in the middle are the High courts of the States and at the bottom there are Subordinate courts, District courts and Special courts. Thus the Judiciary is a separate, independent and organized whole, which is completely apart from the Legislature and the Executive.

India is a Union of States. No State is completely independent and sovereign. The Indian parliamentary system has divided the powers according to the principle of division of powers between the Centre and the State such that the Legislature and the Executive is totally interdependent on each other. Whereas the Judiciary is separate, independent and impartial organ.

The Principle of Division of Power

The Government carries out the functions of the states and these are different from one another. The function of all the three organs of the government are different and all the functions require a certain expertise. All the three organs of the Government should be administered by different people and each organ should carry out its own functions. By division of powers misuse can be avoided. It is necessary to divide the powers between the three organs of the Government in order to make the function of the Government easy and efficient. For example, the Legislature has the power to formulate laws but some powers are so given to the Executive and the Judiciary that the Legislature cannot misuse its powers. Similarly the Executive is controlled by giving powers to the Legislature and the Judiciary and the Judiciary is controlled by giving powers to the Legislature and the Executive.

(1) Legislature : India is a republic having a parliamentary democracy. The representation of the people at the centre is seen at the Parliament and of the state is seen in the Legislative Assembly. The Parliament is an important and apex organization of the nation. The Indian Parliament consists of the President, the Vice-President, Rajyasabha and Lok Sabha. Legislature is of two types :

(A) Unicameral Legislature : When the legislature is consisting of one house, it is called Unicameral Legislature.

(B) Bicameral Legislature : When the legislature is consisting of two houses, it is called Bicameral Legislature.

At the Central level, the Upper House of the Legislature is called the Rajya Sabha and the Lower House is called the Lok Sabha. At the State level, the Legislature consists of the Legislative Assembly and the Legislative Council. Most of the States have only Legislative Assembly. States like Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Maharashtra have Legislative Councils too.

(1) Legislature at the Central Level - Parliament - Loksabha : Loksabha is the Lower House of the Parliament. The members of the Loksabha are the representatives of the people who are elected through direct election. There are in all 545 Members of the Loksabha. Out of the 545 members, 2 members are selected by the President from the Anglo-Indian community.

President is a part of the Parliament (Loksabha and Rajyasabha). The President addresses the first meeting of the Parliament and the joint session of the Parliament. Besides these two occasions, the President never attends the Parliament. The President can summon both the Houses of the Parliament, can withhold the proceedings of both the Houses of the Parliament and can even dissolve the Parliament. A Bill which has passed through three readings in both the houses of the Parliament can become an Act only after the President signs it. Loksabha is not a Permanent House Its term is of five years. If it is not dissolved before the completion of the term.

Constitution of India is supreme and not the Parliament. Hence ,the Parliament has to enjoy its power within the limits prescribed by the Constitution. If the laws framed by the Parliament violates the Constitution, they can be challenged in the court. If the court finds the framed laws against the provision of the Constitution the court can nullify the laws.

Qualification for membership of Loksabha : To be qualified as a candidate and to be elected as a member of Loksabha he/she must be a citizen of India, should be 25 years of age or more. He/she should not be having unsound mind or insolvent. He/she should not be an employee of the Central or the State Government. He must not be a proven criminal. There should be a period of six months between two sittings of the Parliament. A President can dissolve the Loksabha on the counsel of the Prime Minister. A member of any of the House of the Parliament can attend the proceeding of that House and can vote in the same House, but a member of the Cabinet Ministry can attend the proceedings of both the Houses of the Parliament even if he/she is not a member of the Loksabha, but if he/she is a member of the Upper House then he/she can vote in that House only. State of Gujarat has a representation of 26 members in the Loksabha. The term of Loksabha is of 5 years, but the President can dissolve it before that if needed. In case of national emergency the term of the Loksabha can be extended for 1 more year. If the President dissolves the Parliament it cannot be challenged in court.

Quorum : Quorum is the number of members present in the House of the Parliament. It is the number of members present and working in the House out of the total number of members of that House. The minimum quorum of the Loksabha should be $\frac{1}{10}$ th i.e. out of 545 members, 55 should be present similarly the minimum quorum of the Rajyasabha too should be $\frac{1}{10}$ th i.e out of 250 members, 25 should be present.

(2) Rajyasabha : Rajyasabha is the Upper House of the Parliament. It is a representative house of all the states and Union territories of India. There are in all 250 members in the Rajyasabha. The members of the Rajyasabha are indirectly elected by the members of the Legislative Assemblies of the state and the Union territories through a method of equivalent representation. In all 238 members of the Rajyasabha are elected. Rest 12 members are nominated by the President of India. These nominated members should be having special knowledge or practical experience with respect to literature, science, arts, culture, sports and social service.

No person can be a member of both the houses simultaneously.

Qualification for Membership of Rajyasabha : To be qualified as a candidate and to be elected as a member of the Rajyasabha he/she must be a citizen of India. He/She should be 30 years of age or more. He/she must not of unsound mind, insolvent or criminal. He/she should not be a Government employee taking salary or holding any office of profit. State of Gujarat has the representation of 11 seats in the Rajyasabha. Rajyasabha is the permanent House. It cannot be dissolved. But $\frac{1}{3}$ rd of it's members retire every two years and the same number of members are elected. Thus the tenure of the member of the Rajyasabha is of 6 years. However ,the members are eligible for re-election and re-nomination.

Generally both the Houses of the Parliament, meets for three times a year. These meetings are called sessions. That is the Budget Session, Monsoon Session and the Winter Session. The Vice President of India by virtue of his office, holds the office of Chairman of Rajyasabha. Whereas the Vice Chairman of the Rajyasabha is elected by the members of the Rajyasabha from among themselves only. The first Chairman of the Rajyasabha was Dr. Sarvapalli Radhakrishnan.

The speaker of Lok Sabha

The main function of the speaker is to see that the proceedings of the Lok Sabha gets organised in a prescribed form, to maintain discipline, order and dignity of the Houses are the top most functions of the Speaker. The members of the Lok Sabha elect their Speaker and Deputy Speaker from among themselves. The Speaker presides over the Session of the Lok Sabha and maintains and controls its functioning. The Speaker expects discipline from the members in the Lok Sabha. The Speaker is the protector of the dignity of the House. His decisions in the House are final and conclusive.

Speaker can belong to any of the political party or can even have a strong support of any political party; but after being appointed as the Speaker of the Lok Sabha it is expected that the Speaker carries out the proceedings of the Parliament in a firm and impartial manner. By gaining a majority of the members of the Lok Sabha on a resolution to remove the Speaker, with this a Speaker can be removed from his post by giving a 14 days notice period. All the speeches and criticism in the Lok Sabha is done by addressing the Speaker only. The working in both the Houses of the Parliament can be carried out in either Hindi or English. But a Speaker can permit any member of the Lok Sabha to speak in his own language in case he does not know English or Hindi. If any member of the Lok Sabha remains absent for a continuous period of 60 days without informing the Speaker then his seat is declared as vacant.

Casting Vote : During any proceedings of the house there arises any question, matter or problem, or discussion on any Bill or Act; and decision upon it is to be taken especially when the number of votes in favour or against the matter are equal in number then in such condition, the Speaker can give his deciding vote which is known as 'Casting vote'. Apart from such situations the speaker cannot vote. Shri Ganesh Vasudev Mavlankar was the first speaker of Lok Sabha.

In the absence of the speaker, the proceedings are conducted out by the Deputy Speaker. In the absence of the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker, the proceedings of the Lok Sabha are conducted by a 'Speaker's Panel' consisting of senior, experienced and who are familiar with the proceedings of the Parliament experts from different political parties.

When can a Bill Become an Act ?

The Proposal is called a Bill

The Parliament does the important work of augmenting the old laws, framing new laws and nullifying obsolete laws. Any of the Bills either Ordinary Bill, Money Bill or the Bill to amend Constitution can become an Act by passing through the following process. Any Bill can be presented in either House of the Parliament. The Bill can be presented by a minister or any member of the Parliament. If any dispute arises between the two Houses of the Parliament regarding any Bill, the President can call a joint sitting of both the Houses of the Parliament. The proceedings of both the Houses of the Parliament in a joint sitting is chaired by the Speaker, wherein the Bill can be passed by majority. Then the Bill becomes an Act if it is passed by a Majority of the members of both the Houses.

(1) Procedure of an Act from Bill-Ordinary Bill (Non-Financial) : The procedure of presenting a Bill in the House of the Parliament by Minister is called first reading of the Bill, where in the title, objectives and the reasons of the Bill are described. Before presenting any Bill in the State Legislature Assembly the recommendation of the Chairman of the House and before presenting any Bill in the centre the recommendation of the President is required. In the first reading of the Bill the general information of the Bill is discussed upon. Objections must be with reasons and voting is done if necessary.

Section wise discussion is done for every point. Its objectives and its repercussions are examined. Amendments are done in it on the basis of public, groups, association, institutions or opinion of the opposition Party. Voting is carried out on that.

Sometimes due to the work load of the House a Bill cannot be discussed in detail. Therefore it is handed over to a committee comprising of subject experts and members having special knowledge to examine the Bill. Then keeping in view the public opinion they undergo necessary discussion and suggest required changes therein. The report of the committee is submitted to the House. Then the Bill is sent for the third reading.

The third reading is only formal. After presenting the logic in terms of acceptance or rejection of the changes in the Bill, voting is carried out. If it gains majority then the Bill is declared passed. The passed Bill is signed by the Chairman of the first House and then it is sent to the second House. The Bill goes through the same process in second House. If the Bill passes in the second House with its necessary amendments, it is sent to the President's signature and after receiving President's assent the Bill becomes an Act.

But if the Bill is not passed in the second House of the Parliament, it is again sent to the first House. If the second House keeps the Bill for more than six months, it is understood that Bill is rejected. If both the Houses disagree or have a dispute over a Bill, a joint session of both the Houses is summoned. In the joint session of the Parliament the disputes are tried to be resolved through gaining majority..

When a Bill is sent for President's signature, there are three options with the President :

- (1) He signs the Bill thereby approving it or
- (2) He keeps the Bill with him or
- (3) He sends the Bill back to the Parliament for reconsideration.

The Bill becomes an Act is published in Government gazette, then there is enforcement from the date given therein.

(B) When any Bill to amend the Constitution is presented in any of the House of Parliament it has to be passed by a majority number of the members of that house and by 2/3rd of the members present and voting. If a bill pertains to any matter related to the Centre or the State, it requires permission of more than half the Legislative Assemblies of the States. This bill also goes through the same process as the Ordinary Bill.

(C) Procedure Subject to Money Bill : Whether the Bill is Money Bill or not is decided by the Speaker of the Lok Sabha. A Bill containing the recommendations of the budget or financial matters is called a Money Bill. The budget of the Centre is presented around 28th February in the Lok Sabha mostly by the Finance

Minister. All the Money Bills are first presented in the Lok Sabha which passes through the following process.

- (i) A preliminary discussion is carried out on the Money Bill presented in the Lok Sabha.
- (ii) The expenses mentioned in the budget are discussed upon. The finance minister presents all the numeric details of the budget in the Parliament.
- (iii) All the ministers like Agriculture, Science, Defence, Trade Business and Human Resource Department etc. put forth their demands in front of the Lok Sabha and then the voting is carried out to get permission of demands.
- (iv) Sources of income and taxes are separately presented in the budget and both are to be separately approved.

The Bill approved in the Lok Sabha first is sent to the Rajya Sabha for recommendations. The Rajya Sabha has to return it to the Lok Sabha with necessary recommendations within 14 days. Lok Sabha can either accept or reject the total or partial recommendations of the Rajya Sabha. If a Money Bill is not returned to the Lok Sabha within 14 days by the Rajya Sabha, the Bill is considered to have been passed by the Rajya Sabha. If the Lok Sabha accepts the recommendations of the Rajya Sabha, the Bill is considered to have been passed by both the Houses of the Parliament. But if the Lok Sabha rejects the recommendation of the Rajya Sabha and the Bill is again passed in the Lok Sabha, the Money Bill is deemed to have been passed by both the Houses of the Parliament. Hence, in the matter of the Money Bill the Rajya Sabha has limited powers.

After the Money Bill is passed by both the Houses of the Parliament, it is sent to the President for his assent. The President has to sign the Money Bill. If the budget is not passed in the house then the government has to resign.

Apart from this in both the houses of the Parliament the social, economic, political, defence and foreign matters are discussed. The Lok Sabha monitors and controls the workings of Executive, Cabinet of Ministers and the Bureaucrats. It is the work of the elected members to see that the funds of the public are utilized properly. Lok Sabha has a direct control over the use of public funds. Without the consent of the houses of the Parliament no new taxes can be levied or any improvement in the existing taxes can be done. The Houses of the Parliament are called as the custodians of public funds as it controls the functioning of the Executive. Besides this the Parliament has the power to remove President, Vice President, Chief Justice of the Supreme Court as well as the High Court, Chief Election Commission, Auditor General or Attorney General under the charge of proven misbehaviour or inefficiency or violation of the Constitution, through the process of Impeachment.

Legislature at the State Level

(A) Legislative Assembly : Each State has a Legislature and it is called Legislative Assembly. Legislative Assembly is the Lower House.

(B) Legislative Council : The other House of the Legislature is called the Legislative Council. Bihar, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh, Tamil Nadu etc. States have two Houses. There the Legislative Council is the Upper House and the Legislative Assembly is the Lower House. Gujarat State does not have a Legislative Council.

Various States have different numbers of members of the Legislative Assembly. As per the provision in the constitution the minimum number of members of Legislative Assembly is 60 and the Maximum number of members is 500. The number of members of Gujarat Legislative Assembly is presently 182.

Qualification for membership of the State Legislature : Any person who is a citizen of India and is of 25 years or more and is not in a State of unsound mind, insolvent or criminal can contest the elections of Legislative Assembly.

Time Period : The Legislative Assembly is not a permanent House. Its time period is of 5 years. After the given period the Legislative Assembly is dissolved. In unusual situations, wherein the Government cannot function as per constitutional provision or if Government cannot be formed then the Governor can send a recommendation to the President of India to dissolve the Government. The President then dissolves the Legislative Assembly and imposes 'President Rule' in that State. During that time period the Governor

administers the State. For the purpose of smooth functioning of the Legislative Assembly Speaker and Deputy Speaker are elected by the members from amongst themselves.

The members of the Legislative Council are elected from among the institutions of Local Self Governance, registered graduates, teachers of secondary and higher secondary by electorates. To be eligible as a member of the Legislative Council, the candidate should be of 30 years or more and must be a citizen of India. The Legislative Council is a permanent House. Like the Rajyasabha each of its members gets elected for a term of 6 years. Its 2/3rd members retire every 2 years. A State has to decide whether to keep a Legislative Council or not. Gujarat does not have a Legislative Council. Like the Lok Sabha the Legislative Assembly has more power. Ordinary as well as Money Bills can be presented in it. After the Bills pass through various steps they are sent to the Governor for his assent. After the Governor signs the Bill it becomes an Act.

(2) Executive : The most efficient effective and central organ of the Government is the Executive. Union Executive means at Central Government, Political, Executive comprising Administration of the Prime Minister and Cabinet of Ministers, President, Vice-President and Bureaucrats. Political and Administrative Executive officers and employees are in direct contact of the people. The people are influenced by their work. The Executive implements the laws framed by the Legislature. The administrative executive carries out the work of implementing the policies, programmes and planning done by the Government keeping in view the aspiration and expectation of the people.

The Political Executive changes every five years or if the power is given up. Whereas the administrative executive is formed by permanently appointed bureaucrats and hence it is permanent. However the retirement age of the Administrative Bureaucrats is different in different states. Before their retirement, if they misbehave, or shows lack of efficiency to work, they can be removed from their post after following prescribed inquiry procedure. The Political Executives are the members belonging to any political party. Their main qualification is to get elected based on their individual honesty to the party, public choice and public opinion whereas Administrative Executive requires educational qualifications, quality, experience as well as passing competitive examination to be appointed permanently. The service of the administrative officers is known as the Civil Service. At the Centre, the Political Executive consists of President, Vice President, Prime Minister and Cabinet of Ministers as per the Constitution.

President

President is the Constitutional Head of India. All the executive powers of the federal Government is given to the President by the Constitution. All the administration of the Central government is carried out in the name of the President. He is the Head of the nation and the first citizen of Republic of India.

Qualification : A Presidential candidate should be a citizen of India and should be 35 years of age or above. He should not be a salaried employee of the Government or hold any office of profit. He should not be a member of any of the Houses of the Parliament or State Legislative Assembly. The Presidential election is indirectly carried out by the members of both the Houses of the Parliament and the members elected to the State Legislative Assembly. A President is elected for a term of 5 years and he can contest the election after the completion of his term. When the President is in power neither criminal case can be framed against him nor an order of arrest or improvement can be issued..

Functions and Powers : He appoints the leader of the party who has gained majority in the general election as the Prime Minister. Then with the consultation of the Prime minister, he appoints the other ministers of the cabinet. He administers the oath and distributes the portfolios to the ministers. As long as the cabinet enjoys the support of the majority members of Lok Sabha the President cannot dissolve the cabinet. President is the Head of the defence forces of the country. The President has the power to declare war, cease the war or conclude treaties with other countries. He appoints the Judges of the Supreme Court and High courts, Governors of the State, Attorney General, Comptroller and Auditor General. He appoints the Head of the defence forces. He appoints the Chairman of the Union Public Service Commission and Ambassadors to various nations. Thus, vast authorised executive and administrative powers are vested in the President. He can grant pardon, or reduce the sentence of any convicted person, or can postpone its implementation, or can change the nature of the punishment. He summons the sessions of both the Houses of Parliament and

prorogues them. He can even dissolve the Lok Sabha. If the President is satisfied that the security of India or any part of its territory is threatened by a war or external aggression or armed rebellion, he can declare a state of emergency for the whole of India or any of its parts. The declaration of emergency cannot be challenged in court. Based on report of the Governor the President can declare Constitutional Emergency in that state. He can establish 'President rule' by dissolving the State Cabinet Ministry. In case of financial emergency the President can reduce salaries of all government officials, including Judges of the Supreme Court and the High court. Though the President has vast executive and administrative powers and though all the administration can be considered in the hands of the President only and done in his name only, in reality, the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers enjoy these powers.

The Vice President

In the absence of the President, the Vice President performs the functions of the President. The Vice Presidential election is carried out by the members of both the Houses of the Parliament. The term period of the Vice President is of 5 years. The Vice President is the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. The President submits his resignation to the Vice President.

Prime Minister

The Prime Minister is the real head of the Central Government. The Prime Minister is the head of the party who has achieved a majority in the general elections. He is appointed formally by the President. The Ministers to the Cabinet are appointed as per the counsel of the Prime Minister. He distributes the portfolios. Any Minister either to be taken, left or continued in the cabinet is decided by the Prime Minister. He presides over the meetings of the Cabinet and also looks after the functioning of various departments of the cabinet. He takes pivotal decisions. The Prime Minister is the head of the Planning Commission which is now known as Policy Commission. There are three level of ministers under the Prime Minister. The Cabinet Ministers, the State Ministers and the Deputy Ministers. The Prime Minister should be a member of any one House of the Parliament. The Ministers are individually responsible for their Ministries and departments. The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible and accountable to the Lok Sabha. If the Lok Sabha rejects the Policy of the government on a particular issue, it is not only the responsible Minister for that subject, but the whole Council of Ministers must accept the responsibility and resign.

The State Executive

The Governor

The Governor is appointed by the President of India on the advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister. The President can appoint a person as the Governor of more than one state. Any citizen of India who is 35 years of age or above may be appointed as the Governor. The term of the Governor is for five years. However, he holds office during the "Pleasure" of the President and can be removed from office even before the expiry of his term or he can also be transferred to any other State as the Governor.

The Governor is the Constitutional and formal head of the State. All executive powers of the State government are vested in him. He appoints the chief Minister who has a clear Majority. He also appoints other members of the Council of Ministers on the advice of the Chief Minister. He appoints the Advocate General, the Chairman, the members of the State Public Service Commission. He is consulted by the President of India for the appointment of judges of the High Court.

The Governor has significant legislative powers. He summons and prorogues the sessions of the State Legislature. He can dissolve the state Assembly before the expiry of its full term. He can also issue ordinances. A Bill passed by the state Legislature can become a law only after the Governor assents to it.

The position of the Governor in a State is similar to that of the President at the Centre. His powers are actually exercised by the Council of Ministers headed by the Chief Minister. But the Governor can exercise certain powers independently also. Normally, the Governor of a state is Ex-officio Chancellor of all the universities of the State. A Governor can belong to any political party. But after assuming his post the Governor has to perform his duties firmly and impartially.

The Chief Minister and Council of Ministers :

The Chief Minister is appointed by the Governor. The Governor appoints the leader of the majority party as the Chief Minister. If no single party gets the majority, the leader of the combination of parties constituting the majority or the leader of the largest party having the support of the majority is appointed as the Chief Minister. Other members of the Council of Ministers are also appointed by the Governor on the advice of the Chief Minister though the administration of the State is carried out in the name of the Governor, in reality, the Chief Minister and the Council of Ministers enjoy most of the powers of the Governor. In Gujarat the office of the Chief Minister and the Cabinet Ministers is situated in the New Secretariat - Swarnim Sankul, Gandhinagar. The Governor administers the oath of secrecy to the Chief Minister and the Council of Ministers orally and there after they sign the same. In the State Cabinet. Ministry there are four types of Ministers : (A) Cabinet (B) State Level (C) Deputy Level (D) Parliamentary Secretary. The Chief Minister distributes the portfolios to the Cabinet Ministers, He also presents the issues of policy making, transparent administration, questions of people of the Central Government. During the time of calamity he provides basic amenities, love and care to the people. He provides a strong leadership to the State Legislature. The Chief Minister is the torch bearer and path finder of the government policies regarding the growth of the State.

Administrative System (Administrative Executive) : The Political Executive frames various policies in different fields. The detailed and efficient implementation of these policies is done by the Administrative Executive. The Administrative Executive advises and guides the state executives in the matters of policies. It provides required information and figures. However, the Political Executive is not bound to follow the advice of it.

No matter how important or welfare oriented are the policies, laws if they are not effectively implemented by the Administrative Executive then its purpose is marred. Thus the Administrative system provides the necessary back up to the Executive in the formulation and implementation of policies. Expert and professionally efficient and experienced public servants in the field of foreign relations, defence, security forces, international trade and commerce, nuclear energy, energy, production, distribution, banking, insurance, foreign exchange are the backbone of the Government. Collector is appointed as an Administrative Head at District Level and his office is at "Jilla Seva Sadan". Their expertised knowledge, administrative insight, broad experience, prediction, administrative efficiency helps them to carry out the administration effectively. From the organs of the Government the State Executive acts as the brain behind the welfare of the people. Whereas the Administrative Executive is like the limbs. An amicable relation between the Political Executive and the Administrative Executive is the prerequisite for the smooth governance of the State.

The power and influence of the government is becoming more centered in the bureaucracy. Nepotism, corruption, dishonesty, inefficiency, misconduct, escapism are the evils of bureaucracy. So to control such evils Lokpal or Lokayukt is needed. To stop the corruption Gujarat State Government has Started an entire seperate department by the name of Anti Corruption Bureau. Its toll free number is 1800 2334 4444. People can contact the number to file their complaints.

Political stability is expected from the Administrative System as there is a Government comprising of different political parties. The Administrative System helps to excel the development of the Government by implementing various developmental schemes and programmes.

Governance at the Local Level

It is extremely difficult to carry out the Governance of the entire nation from a single place as the Central Government has way too many responsibilities. The power is decentralised with the objective to timely solve various problems, needs, expectations and aspirations of the people. By decentralizing the power, the administration can be carried out easily and efficiently. At the local level the Institute of Local Self Governance have emerged. When the administration of a village, town or city is carried out by the representative of the people elected by the locals in the local institutions then such organisations are called Institutes of Local Self Governance. For administrative efficiency of geographical regions the responsibility and functions of the Government are divided to the local organisations. Similarly the municipality, municipal corporation are the Institutes of Local Self Governance of urban area an for villages one can find Gram Panchayat, Taluka Panchayat and District Panchayat.

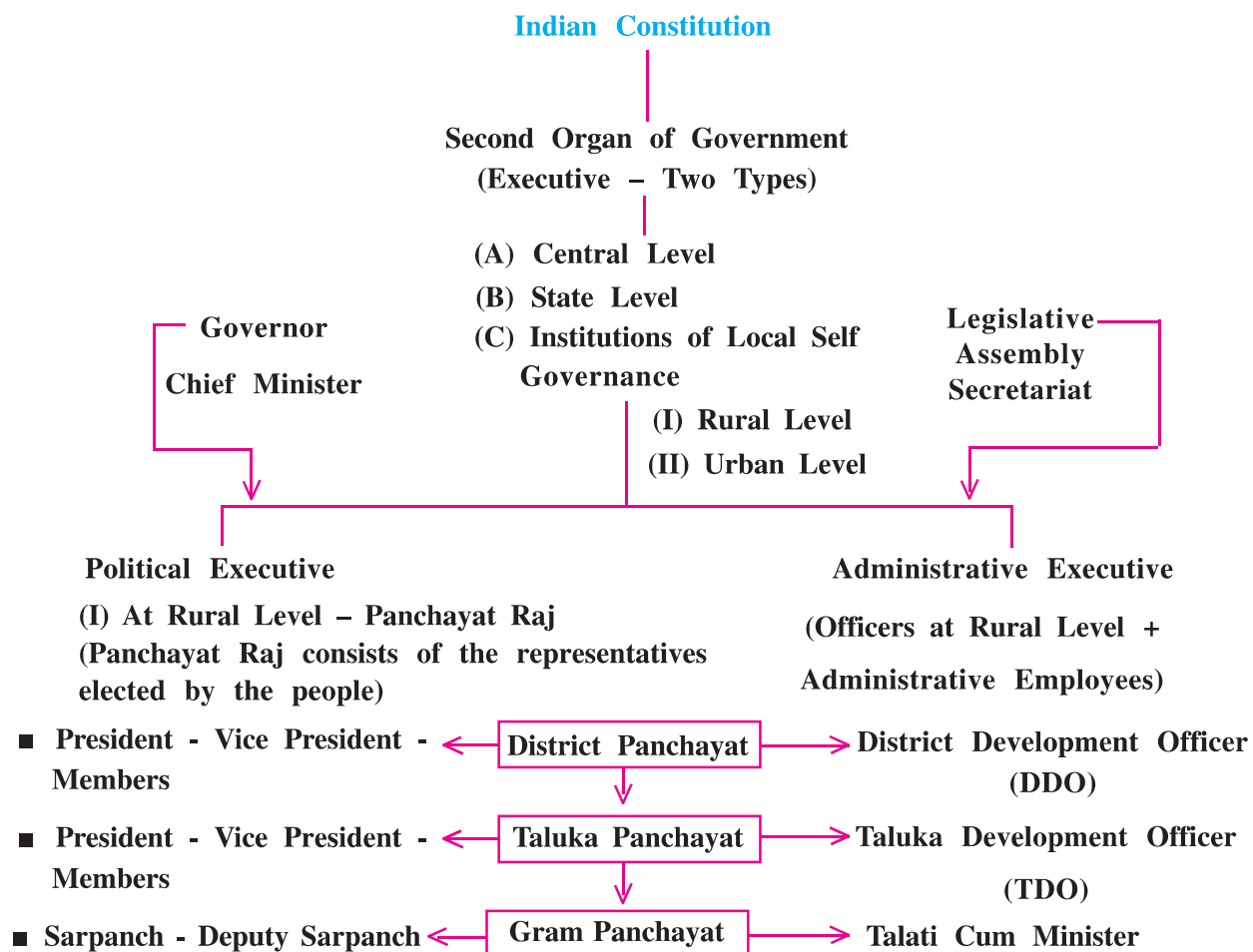
Institutions of Local Self Governance give the training which is available for election, voting, duties, responsibilities, administration and ruling; and opposing parties. It gives an opportunity of self development. As all the policies are implemented at the local level first, it gives a chance to improve the lacunas at the upper levels too. Therefore Local Self Rule Organisations are known as the training schools and laboratory of constitutional improvement in a democracy.

In 1992 in the entire country similar 'Panchayati Raj' and 'Urban Institutions of Local Self Governance' came into existence.

Three Tier Structure of the Panchayati Raj :

(A) Institutions of Local Self Governance at the Rural Level : Gram Panchayat, Taluka Panchayat and District Panchayat is an administrative structure. Each organisation is mutually joined from top to bottom. At all the levels of the Panchayati Raj in order that the local developmental tasks, schemes and welfare oriented programmes are carried out efficiently these organisations are provided with required funds and means. There is a Chief of the District Panchayat and Variors Chairman of Variors committees of the District Panchayat whereas the administrative head is the District Development Officer (DDO) and the main office of the District Panchayat is situated at the District head quarter.

Similarly the leader of the elected wing of the Taluka Panchayat is called the President and the head of the administrative wing is called Taluka Development Officer (TDO). At the lower level Sarpanch is the representative elected by the people, and the administrative head is the Talati-cum-Minister and he handles the administration of the Panchayat. The village in which the election and the Sarpanch are unanimously elected are declared as 'Samras Village' and it is honoured by a prize.



Figur 2 (C) - 1

(B) Urban Institute of Self Governance : As per the 74th Constitutional Amendment the urban areas were provided with the Urban Institute of Self Governance as per the population of the area. At the first level there is Municipality, at the second level there is Municipal Corporation and the third level there is Maha Nagar Megacity Nigam. In all the three wings of the Urban Institute of Self Governance, a Mayor is elected from the majority wing, Apart from this there are Chairman of various Committees and Corporators as per various wards. Ward wise reservation for women and reserved castes is maintained. Various Committees carry out various responsibilities of many fields in a decentralised manner. City Planning, land reforms, roads, bridges, flyovers, bridge construction, water management, sewage management, civil development environmental facility, fire department service, education-health, culture and entertainment, city scape development, development of morgue, crematorium, graveyard, removal of slum, over all development etc are carried out by the Urban Institute of Self Governance. All are managed by funds collected from people under the Public Private Partnership (PPP) as well as the taxes collected from the people and Government Grants. The administrative head of the municipal corporation is known as the 'Municipal Commissionaire'. Under him there are zonal heads having technical and administrative knowledge and various officers. When a cordial relation is established between the elected wing and the administrative wing then many works can be carried out relating to the welfare of the people.

Judiciary :

The Constitution of India has accepted the ideals that all its citizen should get social, economic and political justice Thereby a just and equitable social order can be established. If any person breaks any law then he is either punished or fined by the judiciary. The judiciary checks whether the laws are in accordance with the constitutional provision. And if the law is not consistent with the Constitution it declares the law unconstitutional and void.

If Federal System powers and functions are divided among Unit States and Centres, it is the function of the Judicial System to see that both the Central and the State government carry out their own work without interfering with each other's work. When any disputes arise between the Centre and the Unit State then they are solved by the Supreme Court. The Indian judiciary is continuous and linear. At the top at the Central Level there is the Supreme Court, at the middle at the State Level there are High Courts and at the bottom level there are Trial Courts, Civil Courts, Criminal Courts and various subordinate Courts.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions :

- (1) What is the principle of division of power ?
- (2) What is the eligibility of a member of Parliament ?
- (3) What is the Quorum for the Loksabha and the Rajyasabha ?
- (4) How are the members of the Rajyasabha elected ?
- (5) How is the Speaker the protector of the dignity of the House ?
- (6) Describe the emergency powers of the President.

- (7) What is the process of Impeachment ?
- (8) Mention the powers of the Parliament.
- (9) State the Institute of Local Self Governance.
- (10) State the vices of bureaucracy.

2. Explain giving reasons the following statements :

- (1) Indian Parliament is bicameral.
- (2) Rajyasabha is the permanent house.
- (3) Parliament in India is not supreme, but the Constitution is supreme.
- (4) Independent and impartial judiciary is the foundation of democracy.
- (5) The Institutes of Local Self Governance are the training schools and laboratory of constitutional improvement in a democracy.
- (6) The State Legislative Assembly is the representative of the people's desires.
- (7) Governor plays a key role between the Centre and the State.
- (8) Loksabha is the key public organisation of the nation.
- (9) An amicable relation between the Political Executive and the Administrative Executive is a pre-requisite for the smooth governance of the nation.
- (10) Efficient and bold public servants are the backbone of the Government.

3. Write short notes on :

- (1) Position of the Governor and his functions.
- (2) Executive powers of the State Legislative Assembly.
- (3) Position and executive powers of the Prime Minister.
- (4) The Legislative and administrative powers of the President.
- (5) How does a Bill become an Act ? Explain procedure.
- (6) Constitutional provisions regarding the money bill.
- (7) The usefulness and limitations of the Rajyasabha.

4. Choose the correct option :

- (1) What is the decided age for the member of the Legislative Assembly ?
(A) 25 years (B) 30 years
(C) 35 years (D) 18 years
- (2) How many members are there in the Loksabha and the Rajyasabha ?
(A) 545;250 (B) 455;350
(C) 182;11 (D) 543;238

(3) Which Indian State does not have two Houses of the Legislative ?

- (A) Karnataka (B) Andhra Pradesh
(C) Tamil Nadu (D) Rajasthan

(4) Who appoints the judges of the Supreme Court ?

- (A) Prime Minister (B) Governor
(C) President (D) Vice President

(5) What is the time period of the members of the Loksabha ?

- (A) 4 years (B) 6 years
(C) 2 years (D) 5 years

(6) In which house does the President appoint two Anglo Indian members ?

- (A) Rajyasabha (B) Loksabha
(C) Goa Legislative Assembly (D) Planning Commission

(7) Who administers the oath of secrecy to the Prime Minister ?

- (A) Vice President (B) President
(C) Chief Justice of the Supreme Court (D) Speaker of the Loksabha

(8) Match the Parts :

Administrative Organisations

Administrative Heads

- (1) District Sevasadan (A) Mayor
(2) Municipal Corporation (B) D. D. O.
(3) District Panchayat (C) Collector
(D) Commissioner

- (A) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D (B) 1-C, 2-D, 3-B (C) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D (D) 1-C, 2-A, 3-B

(9) How many members are nominated by the President in the Rajyasabha ?

- (A) 238 (B) 12 (C) 2 (D) 14

(10) Who presents the budget in the Parliament ?

- (A) Prime Minister (B) Home Minister
(C) Finance Minister (D) Member of the Parliament

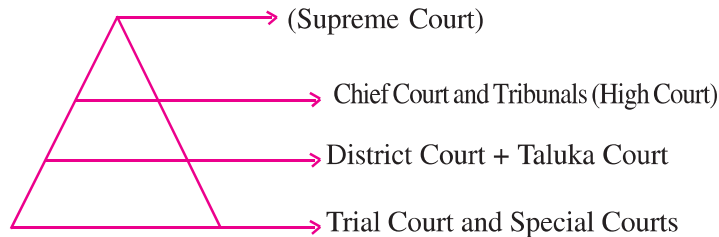
Activity : (Divide the class in groups and allot the activities)

- Make a handwritten pictorial issue on the Prime Minister and Presidents of India, their work span.
- Prepare a Chart of all the Chief Ministers of Gujarat and their work span.
- Invite a Parliamentarian or a member of the Legislative Assembly or a Corporator or Sarpanch to your school and collect information from them pertaining to functions and schemes of the Government.
- Organize a 'Mock Parliament' in the school and discuss any social, economic or political problem.
- Organize a tour to visit the State Legislative Assembly or the Corporation.
- Organize a quiz contest in the school on the topics of Constitution, Fundamental Rights, duties, Directive Principles of the State Policy and Organs of the Government.
- Organize a debate on the topic, 'Have we been successful in establishing social order by establishing Panchayat Raj ?
- Carryout a project on the Institute of Local Self Governance at the Centre, State and Local level.

●

We have studied in detail about the two organs of the Government, the Legislative and the Executive. Now we shall study in detail about the third organ of the Government, the Judiciary, which is the independent, statutory and impartial organ of the government.

The Consitution of India provides for a systematic, organized and uniform judicial system throughout India. The Indian judiciary system is in the form of a pyramid hierarchy. We have established a uniform



judiciary and in it at the top most level there is a Supreme Court which is the Apex court at the middle level there are High Courts and under their jurisdiction are the District Courts at the district level and at the taluka level there are Local and Special courts. Apart from these there are Trial Courts and Tribunals, which are established to cater to various objectives.

Importance of Judiciary

A neutral and impartial Judiciary is essential in the Federal System for the protection and preservation of the rights of the Indian citizens and to solve any incongruity between the Center and State or between One State and the other State regarding the division of workload. The Judiciary is an important organ as to interpret Constitutionality of any provision of any Law so that the supermacy of the Constitution prevails. In order that the Legislature or the Executive do not violate any of the Constitutional limitations, we require in a country, Independent, firm, impartial and fearless Judiciary which is the foundation of democracy. The objective of the Constitution is to see that in the Judiciary process there is no flaw or delay and the citizens get quick, cheap and equal justice.

In the presence of alert Legislature and Executive, the Judiciary would always remain active; but many a times due to administrative inactiveness and irresponsibility of the Executive and an authoritativeness of the Legislature impartial, congizant, independent and fearless Judiciary has shown Judicial inactiveness.

Apex Court (Supreme Court)

Supreme Court is at the apex of the Indian Judiciary. As per the Constitution of India it is the top most judicial organization. It is situated in Delhi. All the civil and criminal courts of India have to work under the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court consists of one chief justice and 28 additional judges. The chief justice of the Supreme Court is appointed by the President of India. The number of judges in the Supreme Court is decided by the Parliament but if the President feels that the workload of the Supreme Court is increased then the President can appoint additional adhoc judges to the Supreme Court as per the provision of the Constitution. The judges in the Supreme Court are appointed on the basis of seniority. Except for the chief justice of the Supreme Court all the other judges are appointed in consultation with the chief justice as well as other senior judges.

Qualifications : A person who is appointed as judge of the Supreme Court should be -

- (1) A citizen of India.
- (2) Should have provided a service of at least 5 years as a judge in any one of the High Court of India or
- (3) Should have an experience of at least 10 years as an advocate in any of the High Court of India or
- (4) Should be a distinguished judge or a famous jurist as per the opinion of the President or
- (5) Should not be more than 65 years of age.

Thus the retirement age is 65 years for the judges of the Supreme Court.

Time Period : The retirement age is 65 years for a judge of the Supreme Court. However the change in the age of retirement can be made by the Parliament through framing a law. They cannot carry the practice of law in any of the Indian courts but they can provide their services in committees appointed to investigate into uncommon situations or events. If incapable to carry out their duties before the time of retirement then under such circumstances they can resign willingly from their posts by tendering written resignation to the President. But the judges can be removed from their posts and power if they are found to be guilty of incapability, misconduct or inefficiency. This removal is in accordance with the provisions of the constitution and is carried out through “Impeachment Motion in Parliament.” The procedure for it is as follows. Every House of Parliament has to submit a memorandum having majority support to the President of the total number of members and at least 2/3 (two third) number of the members present in the respective session. Based on the presentation, by the order of the President, the judge can be removed from his post. The Parliament monitors the presentation of the memorandum regarding the misbehaviour of the judge and the conducting of the investigation as well as the conducting of proof for the same. The concerned judge is given the opportunity to present his narration in his self-defence in the Parliament.

The President of India administers the oath of secrecy and loyalty towards the Constitution, to the judges who are appointed to the Supreme Court. Before taking the charge of their posts the judges are required to take the oath in oral as well as sign the pledge.

The Power and Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court

The Supreme Court of India possesses more powers and has vast jurisdiction in comparison to any other country of the World. This jurisdiction can be divided into Original Jurisdiction, Appellate Jurisdiction and Advisory Jurisdiction.

(1) Original Jurisdiction : When a court has a power to directly give judgment after hearing a case, such a power is known as Original Jurisdiction and the Supreme court has the power to make decision regarding the case, which no other courts has. Under this jurisdiction the following parties should be involved whose conflicts are resolved by the Supreme Court.

- (i) It has the power to settle the dispute between the Government of India and one or more states.
- (ii) It has the power of resolving difference of opinions, fights or conflicts between the Government of India and one or more states on the other side and one or more other States.
- (iii) It has complete power to give judgment regarding fights or quarrells between State-States.
- (iv) The Supreme Court has the right to give judgement concerning any set of Union Government or constitutionality.
- (v) It has the power to protect and preserve the Fundamental Rights of the citizen of India. Moreover it is empowered to issue of Habeas Corpus Mandamus or order of prohibition.

It is not in the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court to settle disputes related to the distribution of river waters between state-state, states-state, state-states or states-states. A separate ‘Water Tribunal’ gives Judgement. The judgment of the Supreme Court is final and it cannot be challenged anywhere. They have to be respected by all.

(2) Appellate Jurisdiction: three types of appeals can be made in the Supreme Court under the Appellate Jurisdiction. (i) Cases of Constitutional interpretation (ii) Appeal against the civil cases (iii) Appeal against criminal cases.

(i) Any person can approach a Supreme Court against the judgment, order or writ given by the High Court on any case only if a certificate is issued by the High Court along with the judgment that the case involves any matter pertaining to the constitution which has been falsely interpreted or contains any important question of law and hence the petitioner can appeal in the Supreme Court for the same. If any such

certification is not given by the High Court and if the petitioner approaches the Supreme Court then in such circumstances if the Supreme Court finds that any constitutional right is violated then it can accept the petitioner's appeal. But in any of the circumstances only the petitioner who is a party in the working of High Court, can approach the Supreme Court, only under the reasons that a false judgment is issued by the High Court or any other Court.

(ii) In case of the civil cases if the High Court certifies that the case involves important question of interpretation of law and that the case holds general importance and it is necessary that Supreme Court decides, then an appeal can be made in the Supreme Court. Judgment of any civil cases involving a sum of rupees one lakh or more can be challenged in the Supreme Court.

(iii) In case of the criminal cases if any lower court has acquitted the criminal from a capital punishment and in that case the High Court has given capital punishment to the criminal then in such circumstances an appeal can be made in the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court can review its own judgments. It can transfer cases, that are going on in other courts to the Supreme Court. The Parliament can increase the powers of the Supreme Court by framing Act.

(3) Advisory Jurisdiction : If the President feels that any particular matter or question holds importance from the point of view of public welfare then the President can take a counsel of the Supreme Court by sending the matter or question to the Supreme Court for consideration. Under this provision the President can avail counsel from the Supreme Court in the questions pertaining to law, reality, and constitutional interpretation or relevancy of any Bill. But if the Supreme Court finds it unnecessary to consider or give opinion on the sent matter it can send it back to the President. And it is not mandatory for the President to follow the advice or counsel given by the Supreme Court.

(4) Other powers : A Supreme Court has the power to review its own judgment or decision. The Supreme Court can punish for 'Contempt of the Court'. Supreme Court has a power to nullify any steps, law taken by the Executive if it violates the Constitution. This right has been given to the President in the constitution under the provision of Right to Constitutional Remedies. Supreme Court is thus the guardian and savior of the constitution and citizens.

Court of Records

Court of Records holds an evidential value and when any records from the court are presented, no objection can be taken against it. The judgments and decisions of the Supreme Court are considered as permanent documents and all are bound to accept it. They are used as references by the subordinate courts while giving judgments and decisions. Any court showing its contempt or disapproval can be punished.

High Court

One of the key positions in the continuous hierarchical pyramid of the Indian Judiciary is occupied at the state level by the High Courts. High Court is the apex court at state level. The constitution provides one high court for every state. The President has the power to form one High Court for two or more states. In India there is one common High Court for the states of Punjab, Haryana and Chandigarh. Similarly under the jurisdiction of the High Court of Assam falls the states of Manipur, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Tripura, Mizoram and Arunachal Pradesh.

Formation : The chief justice of the High Court is appointed by the President in consultation with the chief justice of the Supreme Court and the governor of the respective state. The chief justice of High Court is consulted in the appointment of the other judges of the High Court. A President is a representative of the Prime Minister and the Cabinet of Ministers and hence only President appoints a chief justice only after discussion and consultation with the Prime Minister and the Cabinet Ministers.

The age limit of judges of the High Court is 62 years. They can tender resignation addressed to the President. The President can remove any of the judges of the High Court through the process of impeachment carried out in the Parliament and on proving the charges of misconduct or malpractice of the judges. The judges of the High Court can be transferred anywhere in India. The number of judges is not the same in all the High Courts of India. If the President feels that the workload of the High Court has increased then he can appoint adhoc in-charge judges to the High Court for a period of two years. All the work of the Supreme Court and the High Court is carried out in English language but if any Legislative Assembly of any state passes a resolution that the work of the High Court of related state be carried out in the language of that state then the work of the High Court of that state can function in the language of that state.

Qualification : As per the provision of the Constitution the person eligible to be appointed to the High Court (i) Should be a citizen of India (ii) Should have served for a minimum period of 10 years on any of the judicial post in the lower court of the Indian states. (iii) Should have at least 10 years of practice as an advocate in the High Court (IV) Should be a distinguished jurist, constitutional expert or famous law maker as per the opinion of the President. (v) Should be below 62 years of age.

The Judge of the High Court has to take an oath of secrecy in front of the governor of the state or any person appointed by the governor and sign the corresponding Pledge.

The Jurisdiction of the High Court : The power and functions of the High Court can be divided into the following three jurisdictions :

(1) Original Jurisdiction : Under the original jurisdiction the High Court is empowered to issue directions, orders or writs including writs in the nature of Habeas Corpus to any person, authority and any government in case of violation of the fundamental rights of citizens. The High Court has the authority in the cases related to companies, marriage, divorce and alimony. The cases of contempt of court, land revenue and its imbursement, land reforms and returns can also be carried out in the High Court. All writ petitions challenging the judgments given by Lower Court of the civil and the criminal courts can be made in the High Court. These petition challenging the provisions provided in the entrance examination.

(2) Appellate Jurisdiction : Under the appellate jurisdiction of the High Court the court hears the petition against the civil and the criminal cases. Any petition challenging the judgment of the lower courts and tribunals can be made in the High Court. In case a Session Court has issued any judgment punishing the accused for more than 4 years, then the petitioner can challenge the judgment in the High Court. If any accused is given a capital punishment by a Sessions Court in a case of murder for which a less severe punishment is issued by the lower court then in such condition the judgment can be challenged in the High Court. The petitioner who is unsatisfied with the judgment of the Tribunal can also approach a High Court. The High Court has a power to decide upon important questions pertaining to law including constitutional interpretation.

(3) Administrative Jurisdiction : Each High Court has the authority and power to supervise the working of all subordinate courts and Tribunals of the state or of its region. If the High Court feels it is necessary then it can ask case papers from the subordinate court and then carry out the case proceedings. The Court can frame general Laws to control the procedure and Functioning of the Courts under its power. The High Court can decide criteria and tabular form of various types of fees. All these provisions should be in accord and harmony with the Constitution. The High Court can guide and direct the subordinate Courts in the matter of maintaining records and entries.

The High Court occupies the place as the Court of Records. The High Court publishes its judgments, decisions in an organised form.. These Judgements and decision are binding and final for they can use these court decisions and judgments as reference while taking decisions on various cases in future. The lawyers use these published judgments and decisions as citations while pleading their cases. The court has a power to punish for contempt of Court.

The High Court of Gujarat is located on the Sarkhej-Gandhinagar Highway, Sola, Ahmedabad.

Subordinate Courts

Under the guidance and supervision of the High Court of any state there are District and Taluka Courts, Fast Track Court, POTA Courts, Tribunals and certain special courts. Each state is divided into an administrative unit called District, consisting of a Civil Court, Criminal Court and Revenue Court.

District Judge

The appointment and promotion of any individual to the post of a District Judge is done by the Governor of the respective state in consultation with the High Court of that state.

Qualifications : A person being appointed as a District Judge should be a citizen of India, should possess a practice as an advocate for at least seven years. An officer in the judiciary of either the state or the Central Government too is eligible to be appointed as the Judge of the District Court. All the other judges other than the District Judge are appointed by the Governor or the High Court in consultation with the State Public Service Commission in accordance with the rules framed by the Constitution.

The judge who handles the civil suites is called as the District Judge and the Judge who handles the criminal cases is called a Sessions Judge. A District Court hears the petitions challenging the judgments of the lower courts under it. All the civil suits of rupee one lakh or more either by the Government or against the government are carried out in the district civil courts. The Judge of the District Court has the power to run the cases of marriage, divorce, alimony, reforms and cases of parental custody.

The criminal courts include Session Court, First Class Judicial Magistrate Court, Second Class Judicial Magistrate Court, Mamlatdar and Executive Magistrate Court. These courts have a power to give punishment of imprisonment ranging from 3 to 10 years and a penalty up to rupees 5000 or more. In case of a murder, the court can give capital punishment, life time imprisonment and life sentence.

Apart from these in a district there are small cause court and family court too. For the case pertaining to land-revenue there is Revenue Court and for the disputes of the labourers there is a Labour Court along with other Tribunals. As per example a Tribunal for compensating vehicle-accidents, for the protection of service and other rights of the teachers and professors there is a ‘Gujarat Educational Organisation Service Tribunal’, Tribunals for recovering debts, for the protection of consumer’s right, ‘Consumer’s Rights Protection Forum’. These tribunals function like a court and help the cases wherein the petitioners recover their losses and receive compensation. In each district there is a ‘Fast Track Court’ with an objective to run a case faster. For hearing the cases of POTA, there are POTA Courts in Gujarat. All these courts have gathered importance by decentralizing their administration and function independently, firmly and lawfully. People have started taking all the benefits and have become aware.

Lok Adalats

Gujarat state is first to start Lok Adalats to provide speedy and economical justice to the poor, weak and exploited section of the society. Under this the court provides free support and guidance through ‘Legal Aid Service Center’ situated in Ahmedabad. Lok Adalats function voluntarily even on Sundays and holidays at the district and taluka headquarters as per the convenience of the petitioners. The Lok Adalats generally hear the cases of accident and is related compensation, divorce, alimony, general debts, personal complaints, police

complaints etc. Lok Adalats consist of advocates, social workers, educationists, reputed citizens, businessmen, police officers, insurance officers, judges and judicial officers. Here cases are settled amicably such that both the parties are satisfied. The cases fought in the Lok Adalats are neither won nor loss. Lok Adalats save time and money. Many pending cases are solved. All the judgments of the Lok Adalats are backed by the law. Therefore the Lok Adalats have become a centre of attraction.

Independence of Judiciary

The Indian Constitution has kept the Judiciary independent, firm and fearless from the Legislature and the Executive for the protection of the fundamental rights of the citizens, for the social, political and economical equality and for providing justice. The Judiciary should not be inclined or biased towards the Government. The terms and conditions for the appointment of judges, the appointment process, pay scales, transfer, promotion, retirement etc. is taken care of by the Executive as per the constitutional provision. The judges are appointed for a specific period of time. The Executives cannot remove any of the judges due to their will or any political pressure. The pay scale, the term of service, promotion, transfer, benefits of promotion, pension fund of the judges cannot be altered. During the term of service of the judges any of their behaviour or their judgments cannot be discussed or critically reviewed in the Parliament or the Legislative Assembly. The judges after their retirement cannot carry out their practice in any of the courts. The purpose is to empower the judges to perform their duties fearlessly, honestly, self reliantly, independently and firmly so that the judges can impart true, transparent and quick justice. The Indian Constitution has given the Judiciary an independent, impartial and uniform place. The cases of public welfare, the questions of public welfare or important problems pertaining to public welfare can be written on a simple post card or an ordinary letter to the Supreme Court. In the past, the Supreme Court has treated such matters as petitions and has given trend setting judgments. This has proved the vigilance of the Judiciary in the public.

At present there are about 3.5 crore pending cases in our Judiciary. Insufficient number of courts, judges and staff is the reason in the delay in justice. The present Central Government has undertaken the task of reframing one and a half thousand old and irrelevant laws.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions in short :

- (1) State the required qualifications for being appointed as the Judge of the Supreme Court.
- (2) State the powers under the original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.
- (3) Describe matters that are out of the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.
- (4) Explain the process of impeachment.
- (5) Describe the powers of the High Court in the criminal cases.
- (6) State the required qualifications of the judge of the High Court.
- (7) Name the various subordinate courts.

2. Explain the following statements :

- (1) Judiciary is the foundation of democracy.
- (2) The Supreme Court is the protector and guardian of the Constitution and citizens.
- (3) The High Court occupies a key position.
- (4) Lok Adalats have become a centre of attraction.
- (5) The functioning of the Judiciary is a boon in case of negligence by the Legislature and the Executive.
- (6) The Supreme Court is considered as a Court of Records.
- (7) The Judges of the Supreme Court cannot practice law in any of the courts after retirement.

3. Write short notes on :

- (1) Independence of the Judiciary.
- (2) Appellate jurisdiction of the High Court.
- (3) Court of Records.
- (4) Lok Adalats and Public Interest Litigations.
- (5) Subordinate courts.

4. Choose the correct option :

- (1) The retirement age for a Judge of Supreme Court and High Court is
(A) 65 and 58 (B) 65 and 60 (C) 60 and 65 (D) 65 and 62
- (2) How many years of experience as a lawyer is required to be appointed as a District Judge ?
(A) Three years (B) Seven years (C) Ten years (D) Five years
- (3) In which state is the High Court of Mizoram and Tripura situated ?
(A) Meghalaya (B) Arunachal (C) Assam (D) Nagaland
- (4) The headquarter of 'Legal Aid service Centre' is situated at ?
(A) Vadodara (B) Rajkot (C) Ahmedabad (D) Gandhinagar
- (5) Who appoints the judges of the Supreme Court ?
(A) Prime Minister (B) President (C) Vice President (D) Law Minister
- (6) Which organization has been formed to settle the complaints of the consumers ?
(A) Free Judicial Counseling Centre (B) Civil Court
(C) Consumer Forum (D) Small Cause Court

Activity

- Form a 'Student Court' and provide direct training to carry out proceeding pertaining to small-big matters of indiscipline in this court. Give judgment as well as order fine.
- Prepare a handwritten issue containing all the details of the chief justice of the Supreme Court and the High Court. Paste pictures.
- Prepare a scrapbook of the trendsetting judgments of the last five years.
- Arrange a debate competition under the chairmanship of an expert MLA on the topic of 'Impartial, fearless and firm Judiciary.'
- Arrange a visit to the Lok Adalat and Consumer Forum and organize an essay competition or report writing.
- Arrange a lecture of any famous MLA on the topic of 'Supremacy of the Judiciary and independence.'
- Organize a poster competition, slogan competition on the occasion of 'Human Rights Day', or 'Consumer Rights Day.' Take out a rally in your area to increase public awareness.



India has the highest number of voters in the world. Population wise India is the largest democratic country of the world. This amazing democracy is more than six decades old. During this period in India there has been many political upheavals and up and downs. The Indian democracy is sustained due to the dedication and insight of its citizens. We shall study in detail the characteristic features of Indian democracy.

Election in Democracy

In the world many countries have democracy. In spite of democracy there exists differences in Governance of these countries. In a democracy a voter casts his own vote. The right to vote remains the same in each democratic country though the country's Governance may vary. The democracy thrives through the voting process of the voters during the elections. Our country has a Parliamentary System. Parliament is the national institution representing the people. The Parliament of India consists of the President, the Vice President, Rajyasabha, and Loksabha. As mentioned in earlier chapter, Rajyasabha is the Upper House of the Parliament and the Loksabha is the Lower House of the Parliament. The State has the Legislative Assembly. Some states have the Legislative Council also. A voter is at the centre in forming a Rajyasabha, Loksabha, and Legislative Assembly or Legislative Council. In our country all the governing bodies are elected through voting. Thus democracy is realized by elections.

Democracy and Voter

A voter is very important in a democracy. Our country has Universal Adult Suffrage. A person of 18 year of age or above who is enlisted in the voter list can cast vote. A person who has not declared bankruptcy or is not mentally unstable can vote without any discrimination. The Constitution guarantees a right to vote even amidst illiteracy, poverty and many similar issues. The system of Universal Adult Suffrage is based on the principle of 'One Person One Vote.' It is the duty of every citizen to vote without greed or fear. A voter should be aware and vigilant of his right. The Constitution has provided a right to vote to each of its citizens without the discrimination of caste, creed, religion or education. Voting is an important process in democracy. In our country there is a Universal Adult Suffrage. Voting is a right as well as a duty of citizens. Every voter should exercise the right to vote.

Election – The Foundation of Democracy

Election is the foundation of democracy. A festive environment is seen during elections. The people can evaluate their representatives during elections. Any person who has the pre-requisite to contest elections can do so. Candidates belonging to the political parties as well as the independent candidates who do not belong to any political party can contest election. In an election the winning candidate of any party or belonging to a coalition of parties come to power. In a democracy only with the support of the people one can reach to power. In our democracy Parliament is the apex body and the basic foundational block is the Gram Panchayat. Elections are also held in the Institutions of Self Government like the Gram Panchayat, Taluka Panchayat and District Panchayat. Candidates in these Institutions of Local Self Government are chosen through elections. Elections are conducted in Municipality in towns and Municipal Corporation in cities. Election is the life line of a nation's democracy.

Elections are very important for the political parties as well as the candidates. Election is the barometer of Democracy. Election provides an opportunity to a voter to evaluate the contesting candidates. Election ushers in new political set up or political waves. Election gives a picture of a country's social and economic environment. Election decides the future of the Government. Elections are contested by political parties, independent candidates, as well as a coalition of political parties. In Parliamentary Democracy, the party or a coalition of parties having majority of winning candidates forms the Government and comes in power. The power is obtained as well as maintained by the support of the people. Election being soul of a democracy it is essential that it is transparent.

Public Opinion in Democracy

We have a democratic country. The candidate who wins the election represents the people. In representative system the ruling party would like to regain and retain its power. To regain and retain its power it becomes essential for the political parties to connect with the people. To maintain and run the government, it becomes essential to consider public opinions and thoughts for framing policies or for various questions pertaining to many problems. Public opinion is highly essential for political parties, representatives and organizations. Collective public opinion is extremely important in democracy.

Strong and organized public opinion is very important in Democracy. Malfunctioning of the Government can be presented through public opinion. Public opinion helps in creating such a condition where the Government cannot afford to misrule or neglect the country. Alert and intelligent public that keeps itself informed cannot be misled by the Government. Various mediums in the modern times have proved to be very important in creating public opinion. Let us obtain detailed information of these mediums.

Media of Public Opinion in Democracy

To cultivate the human psyche and to create a strong public opinion the various information and broadcasting agencies are very useful. In today's time various mediums are used to transmit information to the public. These mediums contributing to build strong and effective public opinion are :

Print Media : In today's world newspapers, periodicals and journals hold utmost importance in facilitating people to know more about incidences, events and situations taking place nationally as well as internationally. Print media helps people to evaluate their opinions either in favour or against the information presented by them. The same information presented by the print media can create multiple view points in the people. People give different individual responses to the same information and develop individually diverse opinion.

It is essential that the opinions created are true, firm and unbiased. If the print media presents biased or false details then it is possible to create a false public opinion. It is absolutely essential to have 'Freedom of Press' so that a false public opinion is not created by presenting only achievements of the Government and thereby hiding the faults, failures or shortcomings of the Government. Ours is a diverse nation in terms of language, culture and regional varieties. The regional newspapers are much sought after in corresponding regions. Regional newspapers then have an immense contribution in cultivating public opinion. Print media has failed in cultivating public opinion in countries and regions having less literacy rates. In spite of this various organizations, industrial groups and political parties publish their own dailies or periodicals owing to the influence exerted by printed material. The Government also publishes various periodicals and issues providing important information.

Electronic Media : Audio visual media like the radio, television, cinema etc. are important in cultivating public opinion. Electronic media is more effective in the regions of lower literacy rates. It is seen that radio and television are considered far more important than newspapers and periodicals. Live telecast of incidents occurring nationally as well as internationally can be easily made available through the mediums of radio and

television. A public opinion can be created through the serials, dramas and movies which can help portray socioeconomic as well as other problems like untouchability, dowry, exploitation and poverty in an entertaining manner.

In today's world apart from television the arrival and spread of internet has helped people to enjoy news, serials, dramas and movies sitting comfortably in their homes. All these media can create an adverse effect through the presentation of distorted, obscene and violent information. Hence it is essential to monitor and control transmission of harmful content through these important mediums. In a democracy it is desirable that the political parties and NGOs protest against various obscene and violent programmes telecasted by the electronic media.

Today in the fast moving age of technology people can stay in constant touch with each other through the medium of internet or smart cell and exchange thoughts as well as ideas. Electronic media is widely used to cultivate public opinion. Television, radio, personalized radio i.e. FM plays a special role in cultivating public opinion in modern times.

In today's time, rumours spread instantaneously in the absence of facts and details. Hence there remains a danger of false public opinions being generated. Various types of surveys carried out by electronic media help create public opinion. Surveys are carried out to know public opinion with the help of some details. 'Opinion Polls' are presented during the elections. Opinion polls help to estimate the direction of public opinion. Opinion polls are not always true and reliable.

Electronic media are very important in today's time. In a democracy the people and the Government should exercise patience. Electronic media helps to transmit people's thoughts, details and talks to the government and similarly helps transmit details about the various plans and achievements of the government to the people. Radio can reach in distant and remote areas. But as it is only audio media it has been less effective. Television programmes though expensive in nature have gained more public viewership than radio. In a democracy it is desirable that public opinion should be cultivated so as to cater to the needs of the welfare of the nation.

Types of Democracy : Various countries in the world have democracy. There still exists diversity within various democracies of different countries. Our country has a Parliamentary democratic system. In a country like USA there is a presidential parliamentary system. We shall see in detail about the two types of democracies i.e. Parliamentary Democracy and Presidential Democracy.

Parliamentary Democracy

Our country has accepted the Parliamentary Democracy. In a Parliamentary Democracy the President appoints the leader of the party who gets the majority number of seats in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister forms the Government. The Parliamentary Government is completely accountable to the Lok Sabha. Government remains in power as long as it enjoys the confidence of the majority of the members of the parliament.

Presidential Democracy : Presidential Democracy is the second important type of democracy. In such a type of democracy the President is directly elected by the people. The President remains in power for a specific period as mentioned in the Constitution. Presidential Democracy is prevalent in many countries including USA.

Election System in Democracy

Our country has maximum number of voters in the world. The Election Commission maintains the administration, control and monitoring of the entire process of election. It is essential for any democracy that its Election Commission is independent, impartial and autonomous. It is mandatory to maintain the autonomy of the Election Commission. In the Constitution there is a special provision for the terms and conditions of appointing the election commissioner, their criteria for service, or their removal or suspension from their service. The responsibility and authority to hold elections for the Parliament, State Assembly, Legislative Council, President and the Vice President rest with the Election Commission. The election of our country is carried out by secret ballot. Legislative assembly or the Parliament is dissolved after every five years and then fresh elections are held. The election carried out to elect a new candidate to fill up

vacant place due to death or resignation of the candidate is known as by-election. The dates of election, advertisement, filling and scrutinizing the nomination forms, the dates for withdrawing the nomination forms, the declaration of the final list of the eligible candidates, the allotment of election symbols etc. falls under the work area of the Election Commission. From the time of announcement of the election dates a protocol is implemented by the Election Commission. The Government is bound to abide by the protocol and not carry out any activity or campaign that can affect the public opinion.

The candidates and the political parties come up with their own election manifesto. The election manifesto reflects the proposed plans and works of the party in terms of economic, defence, foreign policy and various problems.

Secret Ballot in Democracy

In our country elections are conducted in a complete independent and secret manner. Indian parliamentary elections are considered to be the largest election process in the world. Various political parties, organizations and independent candidates contest the elections. Each of them presents their works, ideas, and future plans to the voters. It is expected that the voters vote without any benefit, greed or fear. 'Secret Ballot' is given utmost importance in a democracy. A voter has a right to maintain the secrecy of his vote. No one can ask a voter regarding his vote. The amazing process of election maintains the secrecy of each voter's vote. The election commission facilitates the voting of all persons involved with the election process as well as the army personnel too. Two processes are used for voting. (1) Voting by a ballot paper (2) Voting through an Electronic Voting Machine(EVM). Counting ballot papers is more time consuming. Now a days most of the voting is carried out using EVMs. Counting votes in EVMs is less time consuming. It saves time and labour. Voting by using EVM is environment friendly as it does not make use of the paper. If a voter decides to exercise his right to vote but not to cast his vote in favour of any of the contesting candidates, he can use the option of NOTA(None of the Above).

Democracy and Political Parties

India is multi party democracy and hence we have various political parties. Specific criteria are fixed by the Election Commission to validate any political party. Political parties are classified either into National party or Regional party based on certain specific policies and criteria decided by the Election Commission. As per this a party that secures more than four percent of the total votes in the previous general elections, in at least four major states, is identified as a national party and the rest are identified as regional parties. As per the information given by the Election Commission by March 10th, 2014 a total of 1593 national parties were registered. Last year 239 parties were added.

In our country Indian National Congress (INC) and Bhartiya Janta Party (BJP) are the two major political parties. Along with this Bahujan Samajwadi Party (BSP), Communist Party of India Marxist (CPIM) and National Congress Party (NCP) are the other national parties. Apart from this the Shivsena, Trinamool Congress, Samajwadi Party (SP), Dravida Munnetra Kalagam (DMK), All India Anna Dravida Munnetra Kalagam (AIADMK), Aam Aadmi Party (AAP), Jantadal United (JDU), Rashtriya Janta Dal (RJD), are regional parties. Based on the specified criteria any national party can lose its status or any regional party can gain the status of the national party depending on the number of votes obtained by the party. The party forming the Government is known as the ruling party. The party which forms the opposition is called the opposition party.

The opposition party helps form public opinion by democratically opposing the objectionable plans and policies of the Government. But in a healthy democracy it is desirable that the opposition party supports the social and public causes of the ruling party which are aimed at the welfare of the nation. The success of democracy depends on a balanced relationship between the ruling and opposing party. Effective and strong opposition party is a pre-requisite of a good democracy. Democracy is like a chariot. Ruling party and the opposing party are the two wheels of the chariot.

Exercise

1. Answer the following questions in short :

- (1) At what age one gets a right to vote ?
- (2) Which media are used to cultivate public opinion ?
- (3) Which national and regional political parties are active in India ?

2. Explain giving reasons :

- (1) A voter is a life line of a democracy.
- (2) Parliamentary democracy is unique and important.
- (3) Information broadcasting media are highly effective in cultivating public opinion.
- (4) Election is a barometer of democracy.

3. Write short notes on :

- (1) Types of political parties (2) Voter and Government
- (3) Election Commission and political parties

4. Distinguish between :

- (1) National party and Regional party
- (2) Parliamentary Democracy and Presidential Democracy
- (3) Print media and Electronic media

5. Fill in the blanks :

- (1) The system of Universal Adult Suffrage is based on the principle of
 (A) One person many vote (B) One person one vote
 (C) One person no vote (D) One person all vote
- (2) The media is less effective in cultivating public opinion.
 (A) Audio visual media (B) Visual media (C) Audio media (D) Print media
- (3) Full form of EVM is
 (A) Electronic Value Machine (B) Electronic Vat Machine
 (C) Electronic Voting Method (D) Electronic Voting Machine

Activity :

- Celebrate National Voter's Day (25th January). Arrange a discussion on subjects like, 'Voting a form of philanthropy'.....'Voting is a right of the voter'.....'Voting makes the Government'.....
- Organize a school level exhibition displaying pictures, charts, photographs etc. on the theme of democracy. Plan a debate competition. Carry out various such activities in school that enhances the spirit of democracy.
- Plan a mock Parliamentary Election process and make the students participate in it.
- Discuss the uses and misuses of the print media and electronic media and enlist them.

Individual uses of print media	Individual uses of electronic media
●	●
●	●
●	●
Individual misuses of print media	Individual misuses of electronic media
●	●
●	●
●	●

Unit 3 : INDIA – Its Land and People

We are acquainted with the events and the circumstances which affected many countries of the world in the beginning of the last century. The Independence Movement and the Independence of our country are among the most important events of the last century incorporating the world as a whole. We have carved out a new way by successfully completing the challenges created before the newly independent nations. We are determined to reformation of a new nation with a responsible administration, civil rights, independent judiciary etc.

It is almost the completion of second decade of the twenty first century. With India's progress march of six decades, it will be easier for us to view it for the planning of development.

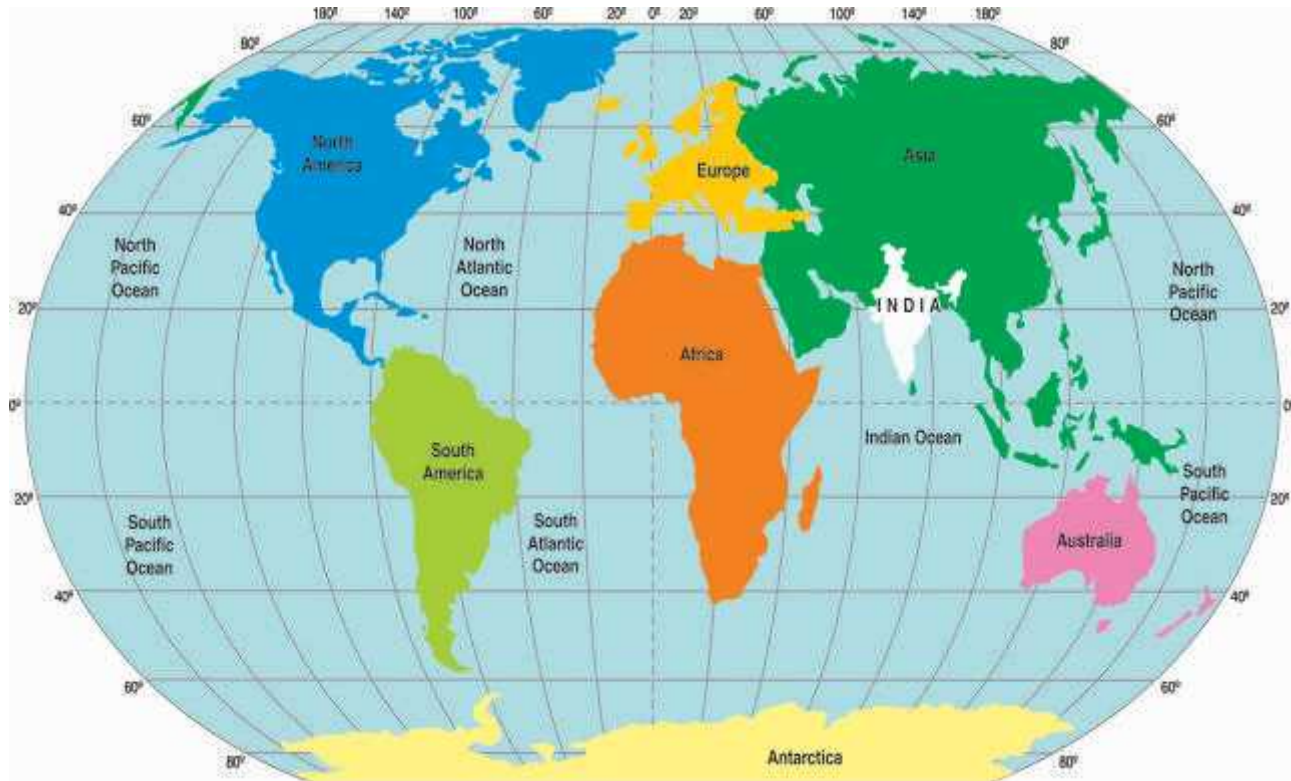
Natural resources and their location are an important base for the endless possibilities of the economic development and progress of any country. In this context, the study of physiography, drainage system, bio-diversity of our country will be of much interest. A diversity in the lifestyle, food habits, dresses, or rituals etc. create an exact picture of a large nation. With the knowledge of disaster management, we can reduce the intensity of the impact of the disaster.



13 India : Location, Geological Structure And Physiography-I

India holds a unique position among the countries of the world. India is a country having largest democracy and its culture is one of the oldest. It has the largest democracy in the world. The coordinating attitude of our culture has not discarded any religion, race or people, but has accepted them whole heartedly. Thus, impartiality towards all religions, people and races is the peculiar characteristics of India. That is why India has become a “cultural confluence.”

Even though many natural and man-induced disasters have taken place, India has consistently continued her progress. The geographical conditions have contributed immensely towards the development and progress of Indian culture.

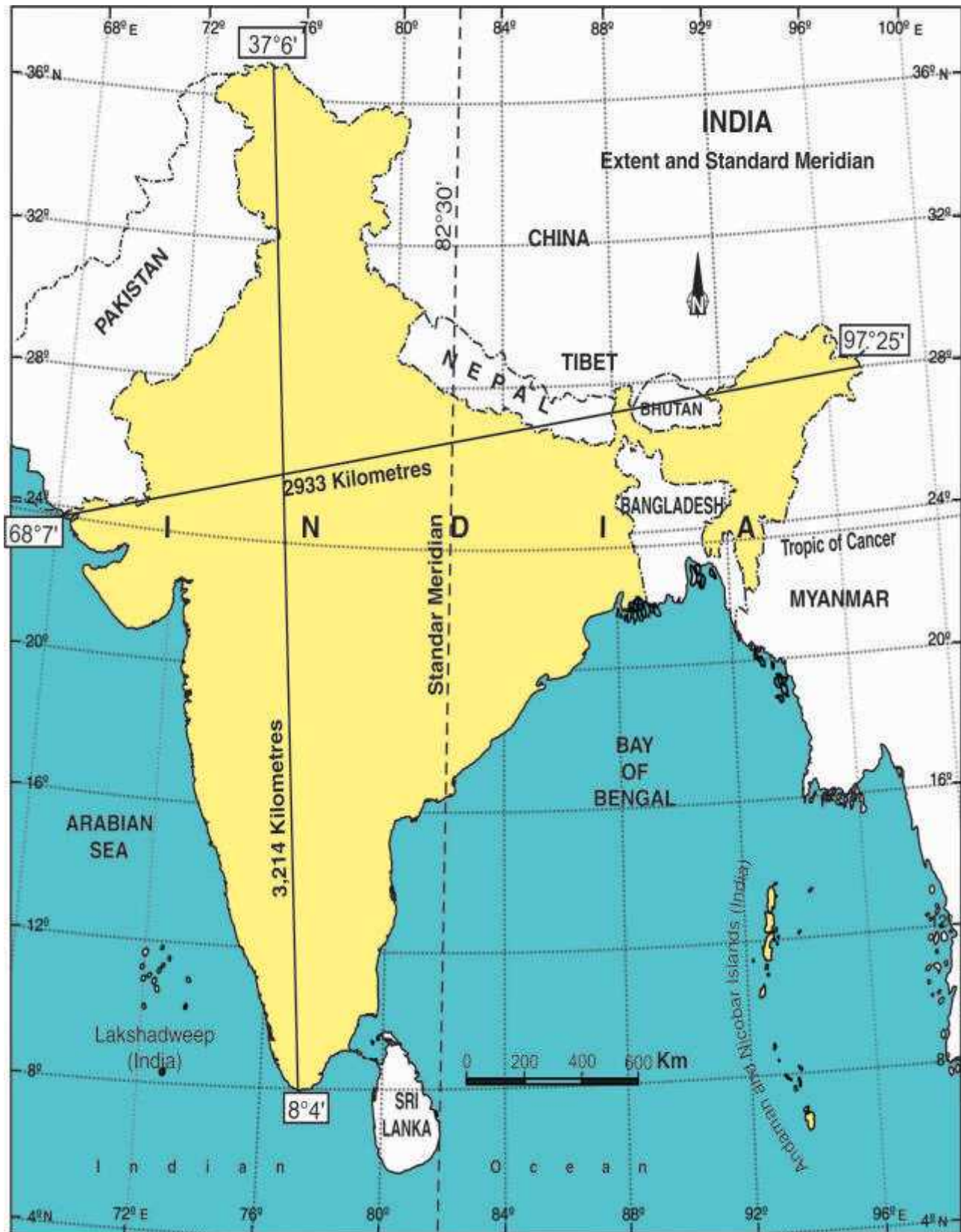


13.1 India in the World

India : Location, size and area :

Geographically, India lies in the northern hemisphere. It extends up to the southern part of Asian continent. The span of the mainland of India extends from $8^{\circ} 4'$ to $37^{\circ} 6'$ North latitudes and from $68^{\circ} 7'$ to $97^{\circ} 25'$ East longitudes. The Tropic of Cancer, which is located at $23^{\circ} 5'$ north latitude and divides the country into two parts, passes through the centre of India. Its northern part is spread more in the east-west direction. The large plains and the Himalayan mountain system are located in this part. The area to the south of Tropic of Cancer has a triangular shape and tapers towards the south. This is basically a part of the peninsular plateau. It includes the eastern plains and the narrow western coastal plains.

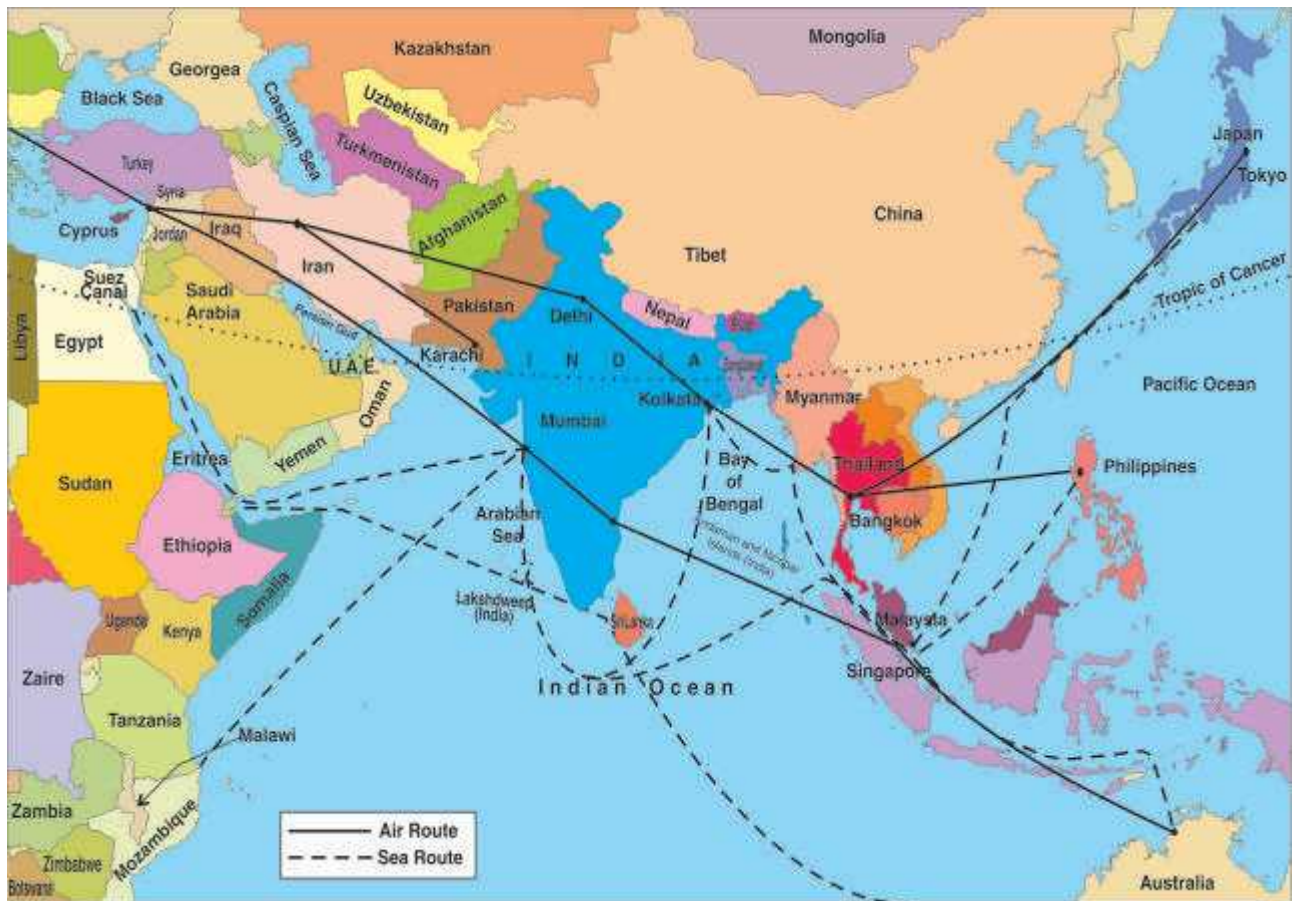
The latitudinal as well as longitudinal extents of India are almost equal, which is about 30° , but actually the length between Kashmir to Kanniyakumari is 3214 km and from Gujarat to Arunachal Pradesh, the width is 2933 kilometres. There is a difference of two hours in the local times between the two extreme places starting from Gujarat in the west up to Arunachal Pradesh in the east due to the longitudinal difference. When it is sunrise in Arunachal Pradesh, it is still night time in Gujarat. The standard meridian of India is $82^{\circ} 30'$ east longitude. It passes through five states. Its local time is accepted as the standard time of India.



13.2 India : Extent Standard Meridian

Total area of India is 32.8 lakh sq. km, and India ranks seventh in the world in terms of area. Other six countries larger than India are (1) Russia (2) Canada (3) U.S. A. (4) China (5) Brazil, and (6) Australia.

The land area of India lies in south Asia. In the north, lofty mountain ranges are spread over hundreds of kilometres from west to east direction. That is why, the commuting with Tibet and China is possible only through passes located at high altitude. Bay of Bengal lies to the east, Arabian Sea to the west and Indian Ocean to the south of peninsular India. The sea is utilised as a waterway. Even though the land routes are obstructed by surrounding mountains, India has accepted all cultural elements arriving from outside, and these have merged into Indian society.



13.3 Strategic location of India

India holds a strategic location in eastern hemisphere, and it has a strategic importance also. India is in the eastern hemisphere. Oceans have contributed immensely in developing mutual relations in ancient times. India had trade relations with East Africa, West Asia, South Asia and South-East Asia since ancient times. India had developed cultural and commercial relations with them due to her location. No country in Indian Ocean has a long maritime boundary as India has. Due to this strategic location, the ocean is named as **Indian Ocean**.

Location of India across the international waterways is also important. With the opening of Suez Canal in 1869, the distance between India and Europe has reduced by about 7000 kilometres. Sea routes connecting East and South-East Asia and Australia to Africa and Europe pass through the Indian Ocean. The Circum African waterway and Suez Canal waterway pass by India. Canada and U.S.A. can be reached through the same waterway via Strait of Malacca and the Pacific Ocean.

India has contacts with many countries since many centuries. Goods and ideas are being exchanged since ancient times. Similarly, concepts of Upanishads, stories of Ramayana and Panchtantra, therapeutic methods, Indian numerical figures and decimal system etc. could reach many parts of the world. India has an important location in South Asia. There are 29 States and a National Capital Territory and 6 Union Territories in India.

India holds an important place in south Asia. There are 29 states, one National capital Territory of Delhi and 6 Union Territories in India.

● **Like to know...**

Telangana was created as 29th State from its mother state Andhra Pradesh on 2nd June, 2014.

Neighbours of India

India has a common land boundary with Pakistan and Afghanistan in north-west, with China, Nepal, Bhutan in north-east and with Myanmar and Bangladesh in the east.



13.4 India and Adjacent countries

In the south, Sri Lanka and Maldives are our maritime neighbours. India and Sri Lanka are separated by Palk Strait and Gulf of Mannar. Lakshadweep Islands are located in Arabian Sea, while Andaman – Nicobar Islands are located in Bay of Bengal.

● **Like to know...**

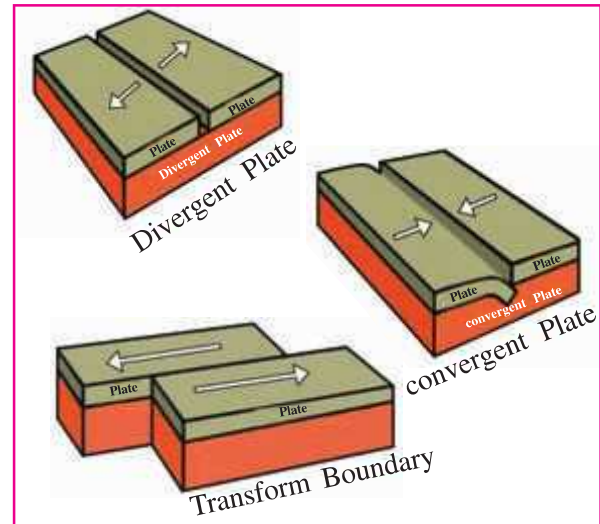
Indira Point, which was the southern most point of India, was submerged in 2004 due to tsunami. With this, few islands of Andaman – Nicobar were also submerged into the ocean.

Geological structure :

The current physiography of India is the result of tectonic and crustal movements of the earth. Both constructive as well as destructive effects of these movements are seen.

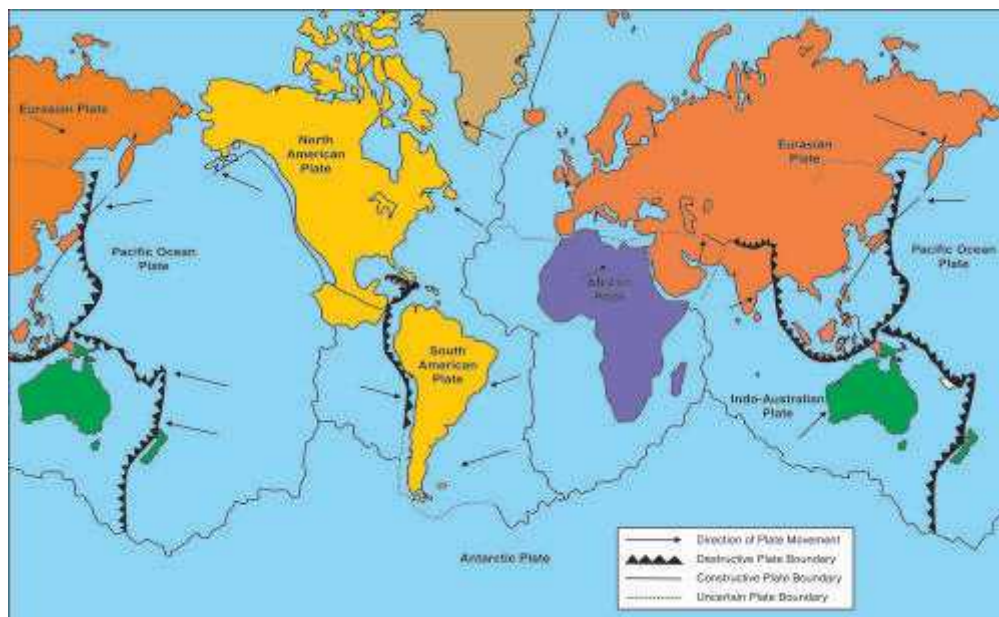
The knowledge about the interior of the earth is very interesting. The crust of the earth floats over the semi-liquid rocks of the asthenosphere. Heat is generated due to the radioactive process in the interior of the earth. It tends to reach the surface of the earth by generating convectional currents. These upward currents break the upper layers which break into large pieces which are known as “**lithospheric plates**” or “**tectonic plates**”. There are seven major tectonic plates. These are : (1) Pacific plate (2) North American plate (3) South American plate (4) European plate (5) African plate (6) Indo-Australian plate, and (7) Antarctic plate. At some places, these plates are drifting away from each other, which are known as divergent plates.

At some places these plates come closer to each other, which are known as convergent plates. Due to divergence and convergence processes, folding and faulting take place. Due to the movements of



13.5 Tectonic Plates

these plates over millions of years, shapes of landforms as well as their locations have changed. The process of divergence is responsible for all the tectonic and volcanic activities on the earth. Wherever these drifting plates have collided with one another, it has resulted into mountain building process. Wherever these plates drift away, fissures are created within landforms and oceans. The continents situated along these fissures are drifting continuously. Such plates are called convergent plates.



13.6 World : Major plates

India was a part of a very vast and an ancient landmass known as the Gondwanaland. This large landmass consisted of the present South America, Africa, Australia and Antarctica. Over a period, the ‘Indo-Australian plate’ started drifting gradually towards north. It is so believed that this plate collided with the large European plate before about five crore years. Due to the collision between Indo-Australian plate and the European plate, the Himalayan mountain system emerged out of Tethys Sea.

A large valley was formed to the south of the Himalayan system, wherein alluvial sediments were deposited by the rivers flowing from north and south of it. Thus the Ganga plain between Himalayas and the southern peninsula was formed. A huge volcanic eruption took place in the north-west of the peninsular plateau as a result of which the western portion of the plateau was disintegrated and was submerged. This led to the formation of Arabian Sea. Due to this submergence the Western Ghats became more distinct.

Thus, a large diversity is seen in the Indian sub-continent. Lofty mountain ranges are seen in the north. Many plateaus, summits and passes are seen within them. Ganga, Yamuna and Brahmaputra rivers flow in the northern plains. Their alluvial deposits have formed this plain. Two edges in the form of Ghats on two sides of the plateau and coastal plains on eastern and western margins are situated. Thus, India holds a diversified physiography.

Self Study

1. Write short answers for the following questions :

- (1) India has a strategic location. Explain.
- (2) Why is the physiography of India explain ?
- (3) Why has the international trade of India become easy ?
- (4) India has become a place of ‘cultural confluence’ – Explain.
- (5) State how many and which are the tectonic plates.

2. Explain the concept of the following terms :

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| (1) Standard Time | (4) Convergent |
| (2) Tropic of Cancer | (5) Hemisphere |
| (3) Peninsula | (6) Circulation |

3. Answer the following questions :

- (1) Give information about the location and area of India.
- (2) How was India benefitted due to the opening of Suez Canal ? State.
- (3) Give a detailed account of the structure of the earth.

4. Select the correct option of the following questions and write answers :

- (1) Through which state of India, the standard meridian does not pass ?
 (A) Uttar Pradesh (B) Chhattisgarh (C) Madhya Pradesh (D) Tamil Nadu
- (2) North of India : China, To the north-west of India :
 (A) Bangladesh (B) Pakistan (C) Sri Lanka (D) Nepal
- (3) Arrange the following states in order from north to south :
 Uttarakhand, Kerala, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Delhi
 (A) Uttarakhand, Delhi, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Kerala
 (B) Kerala, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Delhi, Uttarakhand
 (C) Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Delhi, Kerala
 (D) Kerala, Andhra Pradesh, Delhi, Madhya Pradesh, Uttarakhand
- (4) Which of the following countries is larger in area than India ?
 (A) Canada (B) England (C) Pakistan (D) Thailand
- (5) Which of the following pairs is incorrect as a neighbour of India ?
 (A) Afghanistan – North-West
 (B) Nepal – North-East
 (C) China – North
 (D) Bangladesh – West

Activities

- Get information about the directions from your teacher and prepare a list of what is situated in which direction in your house and in the class room.
- Locate yourself with the help of Internet.
- Study an atlas and prepare a list of neighbouring countries of India and their capital cities.
- Know the names of the extreme points of India in all four directions and write them in your notebook.



1. Northern mountainous region

This is an important natural region of India. It is known as the Himalayan mountain system spread over 2400 km in west-east direction in the north. It has an arc shape. Its width ranges between 240 km to 320 kilometres. The Himalaya is not a single mountain, but is a complex of many mountain ranges. Going towards east from Afghanistan, it extends upto Myanmar via India, Nepal and Bhutan. It has more span in Tibet in the north. It is a part of the mountain system known as the Pamir knot.

Himalayas on the whole can be divided into two divisions :

(1) Northern Himalayan Region (2) Eastern Himalayas

(1) Northern Himalayan Region : There are three mountain ranges parallel to each other. The northern range is called the Greater Himalayas. This is the loftiest range among the Himalayas wherein there are more than 40 peaks which exceed height of 7000 metres. Most famous among them is Mt. Everest which is 8848 metres high. It is on Nepal – China border. It is known as Sagarmaththa in Tibet. Other famous peak is Godwin Austin or K² (8611 m) which is the highest peak of India. There are three distinct ranges in Himalayas which are almost parallel to each other. In the Greater Himalayas, there are some high mountain passes such as Jelep La, Nathu La, Shipki La etc. Mansarovar, which is considered to be a sacred holy place (China) is located in this range.

Like to know...

Mt. Everest	8848 metres
K ² (Mt. Godwin Austin)	8611 metres
Kanchenjunga	8598 metres
Makalu	8481 metres
Dhavalgiri	8198 metres
Annapurna	8070 metres

Second range, in the south of the Greater Himalayas is also spread a in wider area. It is called Central Himalayas or the Lesser Himalayas. With a width ranging from 80 to 100 km, this range includes mountain ranges like PirPanjal, Mahabharat, Nagtiba etc. Many hill stations have developed in this moderately high range. Some of these hill stations are Dalhousie, Dharamshala, Shimla, Mussoorie, Ranikhet, Almoda, Nainital, Darjeeling etc. Gangotri, Yamnotri, Badrinath, Kedarnath, Hemkund Sahib etc. are famous holy places. Kullu, Kangada and Kashmir are extremely beautiful natural valleys in this region.

Third range, situated in further south is known as Shivalik (Outer Himalayas) and most of it falls within India. It is about 10 to 15 km wide and has an average height of 1000 metres. Peculiar valley formations have taken place in this range which are covered by gravel, stones and thick sediments. Locally these are known as 'DUN', e.g. Dehra Dun, Patlidun, Kotharidun etc.

(2) Eastern Himalaya : Ranges situated in the eastern part of Himalayan ranges have lesser height. Some of them are more famous as Hills. These hills in eastern Himalayas are spread as smaller ranges. Among them, Patkai Hills are situated in Arunachal Pradesh, Naga Hills in Nagaland, and Lushai (Mizo) Hills in Mizoram. These hills are located near the eastern border and have their continuation in ArakanYoma range of Myanmar. Garo, Khasi and Jaintia Hills are in Meghalaya. Mountainous regions have more rainfall so dense forests have developed here. As this is a forested area, roads and railways have not developed much.

2. Great Northern Plain :

This northern plain is located between the northern mountainous region and the southern peninsula. This plain is formed due to the alluvial sediments brought by Himalayan rivers such as Satluj, Ganga and Brahmaputra. At some places, the layers of the sediments are about 50 metres thick. As these plains occupy very large area in North India, these are known as great plains of Northern India.

The plain is about 2400 km long. It is considered as one of the largest river plains of the world. Its western part is narrower than the eastern part. The plain is almost a level land. None of its part is higher than 180 metres from sea level. The plain is very narrow near Delhi. The Satluj plain lies to the west of Delhi while the Ganga plain is in the east. This plain is considered to be the most prosperous region of India. Important cities such as Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Allahabad, Varanasi, Patna, Kolkata etc. are situated in this plain.

Sindhu river and its tributaries Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and Satluj originate in Himalayas. Generally, a region between two rivers is called 'DOAB' (i.e. DO means two and AB means water). Thus the plain which is formed by five rivers is called 'Punjab' (Panj + Ab). Most of this plain is in Pakistan.

On the basis of physiography, the plain is divided into four parts : (1) Bhabar (2) Tarai (3) Bangar (4) Khadar. A small and narrow belt of gravels and stones lies parallel to the river from Sindhu up to Tista river in Shivalik foothills. This belt is almost 8 to 16 km wide. It is called Bhabar. The Terai region which is more humid and marshy comes next. Dense forests and diversified wild life are seen here. The old alluvium in the plains is called 'Bangar'. Due to consistent deposition, it develops a terrace shape which is at a higher level than flood plains. The new sediment of the flood is called 'Khadar'.

3. Peninsular Plateau

This is the oldest region of India. This region appears as an inverted triangle. Its average height is about 600 to 900 metres. Its northern part slopes towards north-east which is evident from the flow of Chambal, Son and Damodar rivers. The southern part slopes towards south-east. Most of its area is in south, hence it is also called Southern Plateau. As it is surrounded by sea on its three sides, it is called a Peninsular Plateau.

Peninsular Plateau can be divided into two parts (1) Malwa Plateau (2) Deccan Plateau.

(1) Malwa Plateau : Aravalli Range is situated to the north-west part of Malwa plateau. Aravalli is one of the oldest ranges in the world. It is a folded mountain. Mt. Abu is the famous hill station on this range. It is very beautiful and pleasant. Gurushikhar is its highest peak and it is 1722 metres high. To the south of this region, the rivers Chambal and Betwa, emerging from Vindhya, flow northwards and meet river Yamuna, while river Son flows northwards and meets river Ganga. It can be known from the direction of river flow that the region slopes northwards. The north-eastern part of this central upland is known as Bundelkhand. Besides this, rivers Luni and Banas also originate in the Aravalli range in north-east. These rivers vanish in the Rann of Kachchh while Sabarmati and Mahi rivers meet the Gulf of Khambhat. From the flow of these rivers, it can be ascertained that the western part of Malwa Plateau slopes towards south-west. Rajmahal Hills and Shillong plateau are a part of Chhota Nagpur plateau, which also includes Ranchi plateau.

(2) Deccan Plateau : The Deccan Plateau is situated to the south of Satpuda, Mahadev and Maikal ranges which are located to the south of the Malwa plateau. The north-western parts of the plateau are composed of lava deposits. On the western side, its border is demarcated by Western Ghats which runs north-south along the Arabian Sea coast. It has several local names. It is known Sahyadri in Maharashtra and Karnataka, as Nilgiri in Tamil Nadu, as Annamalai and Cardamum ranges along the border of Kerala and Tamil Nadu. The southern portion of Western Ghats is more lofty.

Generally the average height of Deccan Plateau ranges between 900 to 1000 metres, but at a few places it exceeds that height. Few isolated hills having more than 900 metres of height form the eastern boundary of this plateau. This is called 'Eastern Ghats'. It has a general slope towards south-east which is evident from the direction of the flow of the rivers. Except rivers Narmada and Tapi which flow westwards, most of the rivers of Deccan Plateau flow eastwards and meet the Bay of Bengal.

4. Coastal Plains (Plains along the sea coast) :

Peninsular plateau is surrounded by a narrow belt of plains from Kachchh to Odisha. It is divided into western and eastern coastal plains. The west coast plain is spread from Gujarat to Kerala. Except in Gujarat, the plain is mostly narrow. It is very much undulating and is known as Malabar Coast to the south of Goa. West coast rivers have developed creeks at their estuaries. Most of these creeks are submerged valleys under river water. These are formed due to the emergence of sea shore. It provides favourable conditions for fishery. There are many natural ports on the western coast, which include Mumbai and Marmagao. Backwaters have developed along the southern coast of Kerala, and these are known as **Kayal** in local language.

East coast plain is much broader than the west coast plain. There is substantial alluvial deposition in the deltas of Kaveri, Krishna, Godavari and Mahanadi. Its northern coast is known as North Sircar Coast and the Tamil Nadu coast is known as Coromandel coast.

(5) Archipelagos

There are few archipelagos in India. Andaman – Nicobar and Lakshadweep are major archipelagos among them. There are many smaller islands in Lakshadweep and these are located at some distance off Kerala coast. These islands have a horse-shoe shape. Such coral islands are called ‘Atolls’.

Andaman – Nicobar islands, are situated in the Bay of Bengal. Here, the number of islands is also more and three are situated very far from Indian coast. There are few mountain ranges, some of which are formed due to the volcanic activity. These islands are spread over 350 km and have a strategic importance.

Like to know...

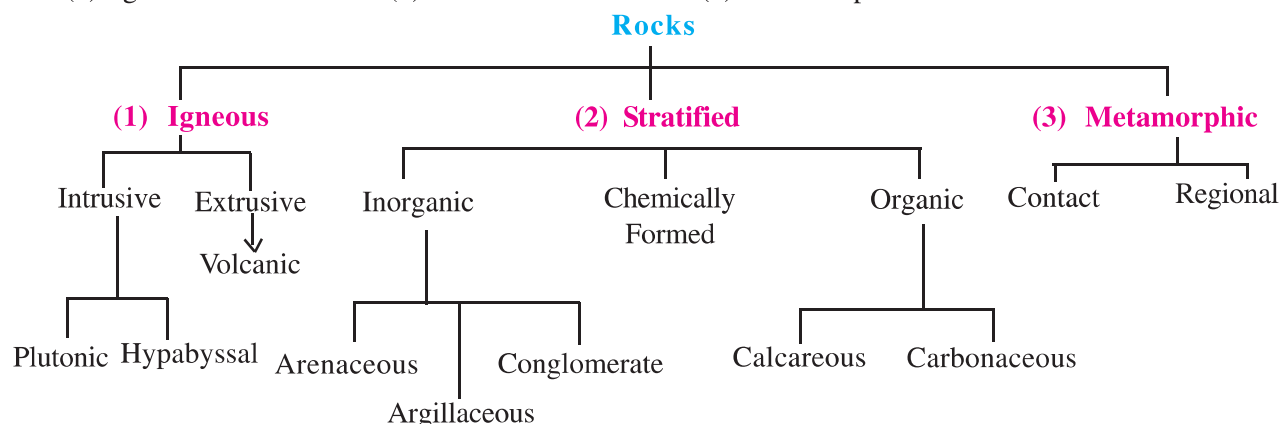
The only active volcano in India is ‘Barren’ Island in Andaman – Nicobar archipelago. Narkondam, which is very near to it is a dormant volcano.

Thus there is a diversity in the physical features of India. Every region has its own distinct characteristics and yet all regions are inter connected. All of them have important contribution in the progress of the nation and are useful in the forest resources. Northern fertile plains are also called Storehouse of Grains. Southern plateau is rich in many mineral resources which has enhanced the national progress. Many rivers with large volume of water originate in the northern mountainous region which is also known for a variety of forest resources.

Rock :

A composite matter made up of one or more minerals is called a ‘Rock’. Rocks can be hard as well as soft. They can be porous or non-porous, and can be light or heavy in weight. Various types of rocks are formed due to different processes. Rocks can be divided into three categories on the basis of their formation. These are :

- (1) Igneous rocks (2) Stratified rocks (3) Metamorphic rocks



(1) Igneous Rocks : The intense heat in the interior of the earth is responsible for the formation of these rocks. The interior of the earth remains very hot due to this heat. So the matter here is in semi liquid state, which is called as 'Magma'. Eventually when this magma cools down, rocks are formed. These rocks are formed due to the effect of heat, hence these are called Igneous (Agneya) rocks. In the formation of the crust of the earth, these rocks were formed earliest, so these are also called primary rocks.

At many places in Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and southern peninsula in India, such rocks are formed. Igneous rocks are most solid of all rocks. Granite is a well known example of plutonic rock. Basalt is also this type of rock.

(2) Stratified Rocks : Igneous rocks disintegrate due to the collective effect of water and other forces. These are also known as sedimentary rocks. The broken rock material is constantly deposited in water and they form layers. Thus, rock material is deposited into different layers. The upper layers exert pressure on the layers of underlying rocks, which were formed initially and are lying at the bottom, and eventually rocks are formed with different layers. These are called 'Stratified rocks'. Its examples are gypsum, limestone and coal. Coal and gypsum are obtained from Bihar and Jharkhand states.

(3) Metamorphic Rocks : In certain peculiar conditions, the form, composition and other characteristics of rocks are totally changed. Due to the combined effect of two factors high temperature and pressure of rock strata, the igneous and sedimentary rocks change into a totally new form. These newly formed rocks are known as metamorphic rocks.

Marble and quartzite available in Rajasthan are their best examples.

Mineral

'Mineral' is that matter which is formed due to natural organic or inorganic process and has a specific chemical composition. Minerals are available from the interior of the earth in solid, liquid and gaseous forms. Minerals depend on the geological structure of the surface of the earth. Minerals such as iron, copper, nickel, gold, silver etc. are found in igneous rocks. Coal, mineral oil and natural gas etc. are available from stratified rocks, while slate, marble, diamond etc. are available from metamorphic rocks.

Classification of minerals : In our routine life, about 200 minerals are used directly or indirectly. A universally accepted classification of minerals is not possible. However, a general classification can be done as follows :

(1) Metallic minerals :

- (a) Precious metallic minerals : gold, silver, platinum etc.
- (b) Light metallic minerals : Magnesium, bauxite, titanium etc.
- (c) Minerals of general use : Iron, copper, lead, zinc, tin, nickel etc.
- (d) Minerals used alloys : chromium, manganese, tungsten, vanadium etc.

(2) Non – Metallic minerals : Limestone, chalk, asbestos, mica, fluorspar, gypsum, sulphur, diamond etc.

(3) Energy resources : Coal, mineral oil and natural gas, uranium, thorium etc.

Major minerals and their spatial distribution

Serial	Mineral	States
1.	Iron	Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, Goa, Odisha, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, Rajasthan, Karnataka, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh
2.	Manganese	Karnataka, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Goa,
3.	Copper	Gujarat, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan Sikkim, Meghalaya, Maharashtra, West Bengal M.P., Jharkhand
4.	Bauxite	Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Maharashtra, Jharkhand, Gujarat
5.	Lead	Rajasthan, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Odisha, Maharashtra, Meghalaya, Sikkim, Gujarat
6.	Mica	Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan, Bihar, Jharkhand
7.	Limestone	Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Karnataka, Himachal Pradesh

Soil :

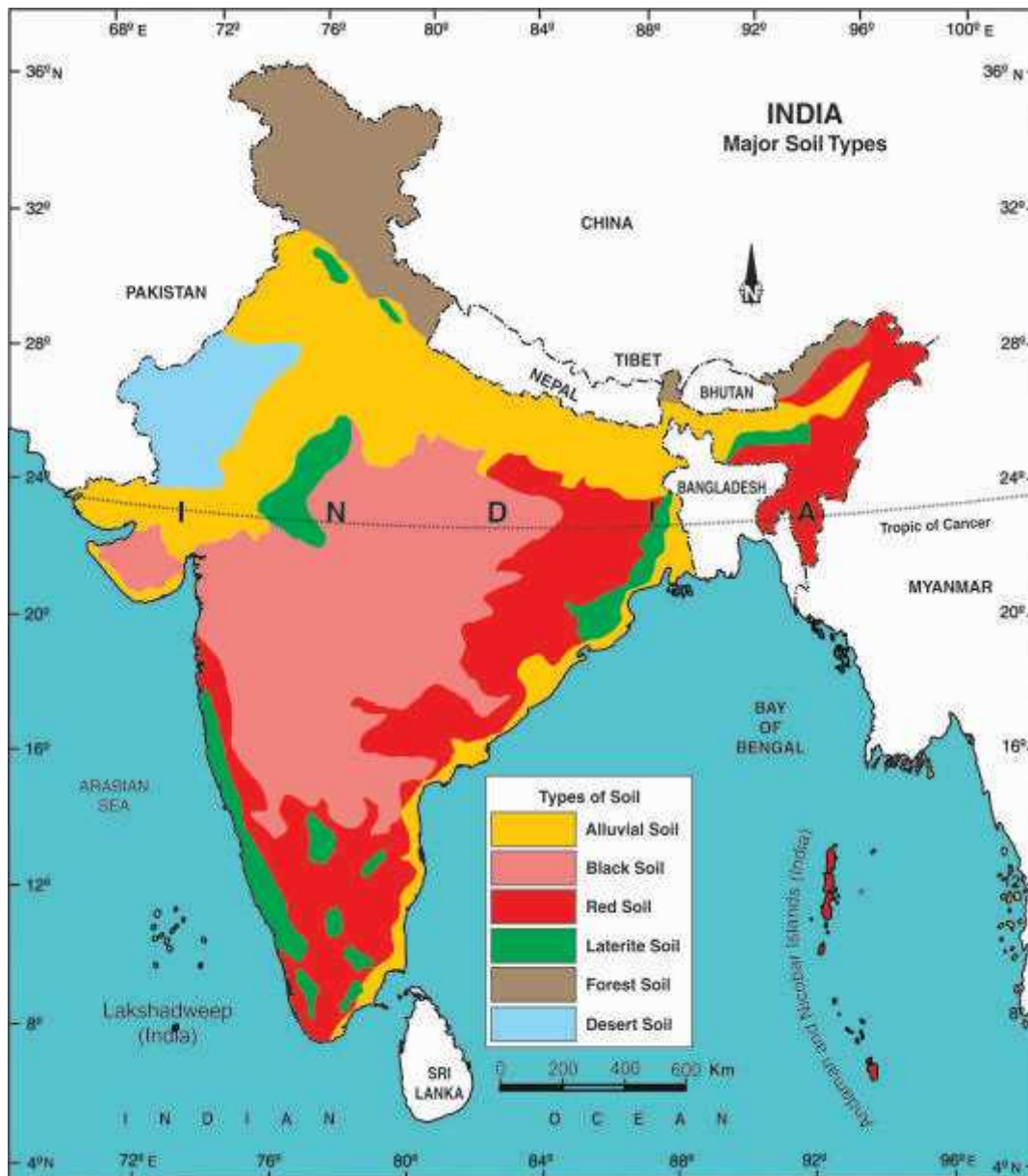
We know that soil is the basic resource for agriculture. Besides agriculture, soil is also very important.

Soil is a thin layer formed of the organic and inorganic matter on the surface of the earth. Soil is related to the surface of the earth in the same way as the apple with its skin. The thin layer on the crust of the earth is called soil.

Soil Formation : Soil is the result of denudation of rocks. The rock surface is eroded due to factors like temperature, rain, snow, air, vegetation and insects and it turns into powdery form. Thus it forms the land layer. In this layer, there are gravels, smaller stones, pebbles, soil particles etc. which are known as 'Regolith'. It contains only mineral contents. Then the biotic matter, air and water are mixed with it. Finally soil is formed out of this mixture. The process of soil formation is a long term process.

Soils in India : Soils in India are classified into six types :

- (1) Alluvial Soil (2) Black (or regur) soil (3) Red soil (4) Laterite soil (5) Mountain soil
- (6) Desert soil.



14.3 India – Major Soil Types

(1) Alluvial Soil : Alluvial soil can be divided into two parts : (1) Khadar, and (2) Bangar. The soil formed due to the fresh alluvial deposit is known as Khadar soil. As this soil is formed due to the river floods, it is found mostly nearby the river. Generally such soil is sandy. Soil containing old alluvium in the upper valley region of a river is called Bangar soil. It is sticky and has dark colour. Alluvial soil is seen in many parts of the country. Their fertility is also different at different places. Generally, such soil is very fertile. It is found in Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal etc.

(2) Black Soil : This soil is found mostly in Maharashtra, western Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana and Tamil Nadu. Black soil is the gift of peninsular plateau. This soil is very sticky and fertile. It can contain humidity for a prolonged time. It is formed from the metamorphic rocks and is very useful for cotton cultivation. That is why it has become famous as Black Cotton Soil. It is also known as regur soil.

(3) Red Soil : Such soil is found in regions of igneous and metamorphic rocks. Its red colour is due to its ferrous and other humus contents. The soil is porous and fertile. Such soil is seen in Goa, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha and Jharkhand.

(4) Laterite Soil : Laterite soil develops as a result of excessive erosion by rain. Due to heavy rain, the humus contents from the top soil descend into the lower strata which is called leaching. As the soil contains less humus, it is less fertile. The red sandstones contain iron and aluminium. The erosion of these rock results into its red colour. Such soil is found in mountainous region of Deccan, Karnataka, Kerala, Odisha and some parts of North-East.

(5) Mountain Soils : Humus content is more due to the forests, although it differs from place to place. Such soil on Shivalik Range is less fertile and less developed. The soil is sandy and porous and does not contain humus. Such soil is found in the mountainous region of the country, such as in Meghalaya, Arunachal Pradesh, eastern hill ranges, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh and Jammu-Kashmir states.

(6) Desert Soils : Such soil is found in the arid and semi-arid regions of Gujarat, Rajasthan, Punjab and Haryana. The soil here is more alkaline and has less humus contents. Agriculture has been made possible in such soil only through irrigation.

Thus, a large diversity in soils of the nation is seen due to diversity in climate and relief features.

Self study

1. Write short answers for the following questions :

- (1) Which passes are located in the Himalayan system ?
- (2) What is regolith ?
- (3) Which are the major types of rocks ? State them.
- (4) State the soil formation process.

2. Explain the following terms :

- | | |
|----------------|----------|
| (1) Deposition | (4) Rock |
| (2) Bangar | (5) Soil |
| (3) Mineral | |

3. Write to-the-point answers of the following questions :

- (1) Archipelagos of India
- (2) State the types of soils of India and give a detailed information.
- (3) Classify the minerals.

4. Select the correct option of the following questions and complete the answer :

- (1) Patkai Hills : Arunachal Pradesh :: Lushai
 (A) Nagaland (B) Manipur (C) Mizoram (D) Meghalaya
- (2) Who from the following speaks the incorrect statement ? Find out.
 (A) Kashish : Gold, silver, platinum are precious minerals.
 (B) Kinni : Bauxite, titanium and magnesium are light metallic minerals.
 (C) Dhruvi : Tungston, manganese, and chromium etc. are non-metallic minerals.
 (D) Nidhi : Lead, copper and iron etc. are minerals taken in common use.

- (3) Join correct matches :

A

A

- (1) Stratified rock (A) Granite
- (2) Metamorphic rock (B) Limestone
- (3) Igneous rock (C) Marble
- (A) 1-B, 2-C, 3-A (B) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B
- (C) 1-C, 2-B, 3-A (D) 1-B, 2-A, 3-C
- (4) Which of the following statement is true ?
 (A) Western Ghats have more height in north region.
 (B) Western Ghats are called Nilgiri in Karnataka.
 (C) Western Ghats are spread north-south in unbroken form along the Arabian Sea coast.
 (D) Western Ghats are called as Sahyadri on the border of Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- (5) Which plateau is situated between Aravalli and Vindhya ?
 (A) Chhota Nagpur (B) Malwa
 (C) Deccan (D) Shilong

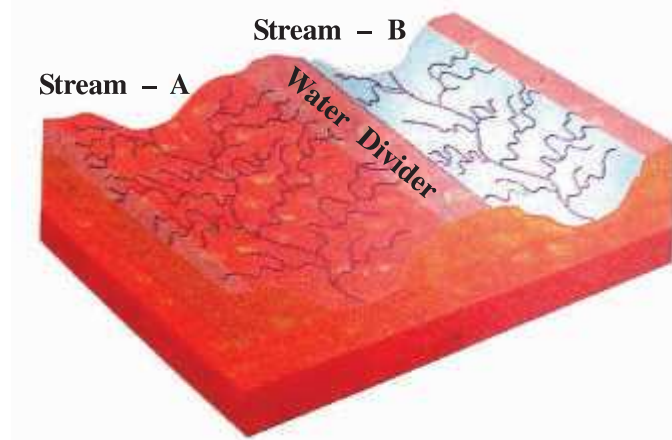
Activities

- Arrange a visit to the major archipelagos of India.
- With the help of an atlas, observe the map of relief features of India and study.
- Prepare an album containing the information about natural disasters like earthquake and volcano, and prepare their models also.

15

Drainage System

The word 'drainage system, is used for the systematic pattern of rivers. While observing the physiography of India, it is seen that one main river along with its tributaries come from different directions and merge into a single river. The water of these rivers is emptied into a water reservoir, sea or a desert. Thus, when a river flows through its system in any area, it is called a 'river basin'. When a mountain or an upland separates the flow of water from one another, it is called Water-divide.



15.1 Water Divider

Like to know...

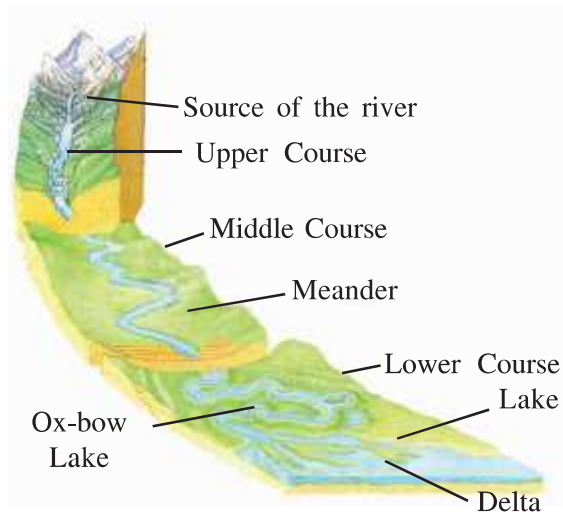
River amazon has the largest river basin in the world. Ganga has the largest river basin in India.

Drainage system of India :

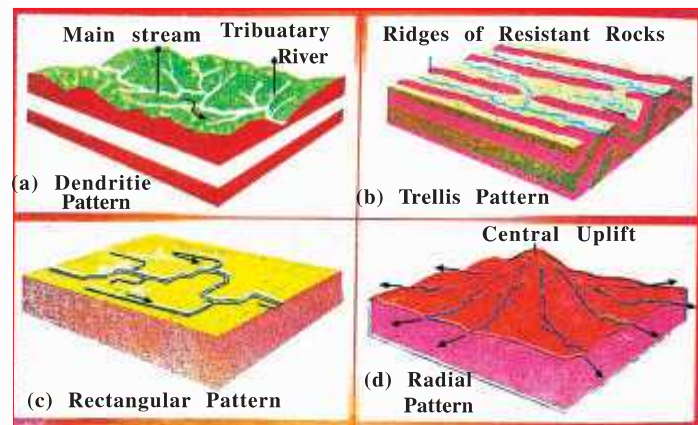
The drainage system of India follows its physiography. Accordingly, the drainage system of India is divided into two parts :

- (1) Himalayan Rivers (2) Peninsular Rivers

Rivers of India are divided into two zones according to the physical features. Due to this a large difference is seen among the Himalayan and Peninsular rivers. Himalayan rivers contain water throughout the year. These rivers are perennial because of the increase in water volume due to heavy rain during monsoon and due to the melting of snow during summer. Two major rivers of Himalaya, Sindhu and Brahmaputra, originate in the northern part of this mountain system. These rivers have cut deep gorges by cutting the mountains. Himalayan rivers cross a long way from its origin to the sea.



15.2 Different Stages of River



15.3 River Systems

Three stages of a river system

(1) Upper Course (2) Middle Course (3) Lower Course

When a river starts from mountainous region, it causes intense erosion. It carries huge volume of sand and sediments along with it. Its flow decreases in its middle and lower course. Meanders are seen here. Due to these meanderings and the impact of floods, a lake is formed in the shape of animal's hoof. Near its delta, a river is divided into many tributaries. This divided area turns into a very fertile plain in a triangle shape. This is called Delta.

Peninsular rivers are seasonal because these are dependent on rain water. During dry season, their flow is either reduced or is totally stopped. Compared to the Himalayan rivers, their length is also less and are also shallow. Due to the physiography and the slopes of the mountains, most of the peninsular rivers originate in the Western Ghats, flow eastwards and meet Bay of Bengal. Western Ghats serve as a major water divide for the peninsular rivers.

- **Like to know...**

Arrangement of river Pattern :

The river system of main river and its tributaries is seen as follows :

(A) Dendritic Pattern :

When the arrangement of a river and its tributaries make a shape of the branches of a tree, it is called Dendritic Pattern, e.g. Ganga.

(B) Trellis Pattern :

Streams starting from mountainous region meet one-another due to the slopes, they make a net-like shape. It is called Trellis Pattern. e.g., many streams from Himalayan region.

(C) Rectangular Pattern :

When the main river and its tributaries meet at right angles, it develops Rectangular Pattern. Mostly, rivers flowing through rift valleys form such river system. E.g. Narmada.

(D) Radial Pattern :

When streams flow out in all directions from a mountain, this type of river system is formed. e.g. rivers of Saurashtra.



15.4 India : Major rivers and Lakes

(1) Himalayan Rivers :

Sindhu, Ganga and Brahmaputra are major rivers originating in the Himalayas. These rivers are long and many tributaries meet them. When a large river and her many tributaries meet, they form a shape, which is called system.

Sindhu (Indus) River System : River Sindhu emerges from near Mansarovar in Tibet. First it flows to north and then turns westwards. There it enters Ladakh District of Jammu-Kashmir. It has formed many inaccessible gorges. Rivers Zaskar, Nubara, Shyok and Hunza meet her. Satluj, Beas, Ravi and Jhelum are her main tributaries. These five rivers meet river Sindhu near Mithankot in Pakistan. The combined flow of all these rivers ultimately flows southwards and meets the Arabian Sea. These rivers flow at a slower speed in the plain. About one third of its basin falls in the mountainous region of Jammu- Kashmir.

Like to know...

- River **Sindhu** is 2900 km long.
- In 1960, a Treaty was signed with Pakistan regarding the distribution of the water of Sindhu river.
- Accordingly, India can use only 20 % of its water.
- Irrigation has been possible in Punjab, Haryana and south-western parts of Rajasthan by harnessing the waters of Satluj, Ravi and Beas rivers.

Ganga River System : Rivers **Bhagirathi** and Alaknanda emerging from the **Gangotri** area in Himalayas, merge with each other near **Devprayag** (Uttarakhand). Ganga leaves the mountainous terrain and enters plains near **Haridwar**.

Many Himalayan rivers meet Ganga. Among them **Ghaghra**, **Gandak** and **Kosi** are major rivers. **Yamuna** emerges from **Yamnotri** in Himalayas. Flowing to the right side of Ganga, it merges with Ganga near **Allahabad**. The source of Ghaghra, Gandak and Kosi rivers lies in Nepal. Hence the northern plain experiences flood disasters every year. There is a heavy loss of lives and property in some areas, yet India has been able to attain prosperity in agriculture through the fertile plains formed by these rivers.

Few rivers like **Chambal**, **Betwa** originate in peninsular plateau and meet Yamuna. **Son** river meets Ganga. These rivers originate in semi - arid area, their flow length is shorter and have limited volume of water.

The combined flow of the rivers from north and south is divided ahead into two branches. One branch enters Bangladesh and is known there as **Padma**. Another branch is known as **Bhagirathi - Hugli** in west Bengal. Finally, these two branches meet the Bay of Bengal.

The flow of Ganga, which is known as **Padma** in Bangladesh, merges there with Brahmaputra river and their combined flow is called **Meghna**. The Ganga - Brahmaputra delta is the most fertile delta. and is known as **Sundarvan**.

Like to know...

- The delta region of Ganga is called '**Sundarvan**' because the trees known as 'sundari' grow in large number here.
- Sundarvan delta is more famous as mangrove forests.
- Total length of Ganga exceeds 2500 kilometres. Ambala City works as a water divide between Ganga and Sindhu rivers. Ambala to Sundarvan is about 1800 km, but the slope is very gentle. Ambala is at an altitude of 300 metres from sea level, while Sundarvan is at sea level. Considering this, the slope happens to be less than one metre for every 6 km so there are many meanders in this river.

Brahmaputra River System : River Brahmaputra originates near Mansarovar in Tibet. Its source is the near the place of origin of rivers Sindhu and Satluj. Most of its flow is outside India. This river flows in the east parallel to Himalayan Mountain System. Near Namcha Barwa, it takes 'u' shape turn and enters Arunachal Pradesh. Here it is known as Dihang. This river, with Lohit and Kenula tributaries, is collectively known as Brahmaputra in Assam.

Like to know...

- Brahmaputra is the only river having a masculine pronoun, and is about 2900 kilometres long.
- Brahmaputra is known as Tsang Po in Tibet and as Jamuna in Bangladesh.
- 'Mazuli', an island in Brahmaputra, is the largest riverine island in the world.

There is less of sedimentation in this river in Tibet. In India, the river passes through regions of heavy rainfall. So further down there is more of water mass as well as sediments. Many tributaries meet this river in Assam. Thus river Brahmaputra flows in a braided form.

Every year, there is a huge increase in its water as it overflows during rainy season. As a result, devastating floods often occur in Assam and Bangladesh. There is a contrast in this river compared to other rivers of North India. Due to heavy rains in Assam during monsoon, there is a huge deposition. The increasing level of sand in this river brings its bed higher. So there are frequent changes in the course of the river.

(2) Peninsular Rivers :

Western Ghats is considered to be the main water divide for peninsular rivers. Major rivers of the peninsula are Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri etc. All these rivers flow eastwards and meet the Bay of Bengal. Many rivers flow to the west of Western Ghats. Large rivers like Narmada and Tapi flow from east to west and meet the Arabian Sea in the west.

Narmada Basin : Narmada originates near Amarkantak plateau in Madhya Pradesh. It flows westward in a rift valley. It flows through a rocky terrain of marbles near Jabalpur, and flows faster due to slope. The Dhuadhar Falls are located here.

Tributaries of this river do not have longer flow. Most of the rivers meet at right angles. Its basin area is spread over Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat. Narmada is about 1312 km long.

Tapi Basin : Satpuda ranges are located in Madhya Pradesh. Tapi river originates in Betul District. It flows in a rift valley, parallel to Narmada, and meets Arabian Sea. It has an extensive basin in Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra.

Coastal plain between Arabian Sea and Western Ghats is very narrow. So the rivers have a shorter flow. Major rivers flowing westward have shorter course. Major rivers flowing westward are Sabarmati and Mahi (Mahisagar). Tapi is almost 724 km long.

Godavari Basin: This is the largest of the peninsular rivers. It starts from the slopes of western Ghats near Nasik in Maharashtra. It is about 1465 km long. It flows to the east and meets Bay of Bengal. It has the largest basin among the peninsular rivers. About 50 % of its basin lies in Maharashtra, and the rest is in Madhya Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh.

Many tributaries meet Godavari. Among them, Purna, Vardha, Pranhita, Manjara, Vainganga and Penganga are major rivers. Godavari has a longer flow and a large basin, so it is also known as Ganga of south.

Mahanadi Basin : Mahanadi originates in the mountainous area of Chhattisgarh. It flows through Odisha and meets Bay of Bengal. It is about 860 km long and has a basin spread in Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand and Odisha.

Krishna Basin : It originates near Mahabaleshwar in Maharashtra. It is about 1400 km long. Tungbhadra, Koyna, Ghatprabha, Musi and Bhima are her major tributaries. Its basin extends in Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.

Kaveri Basin : It has its origin in the Brahmagiri Range in Western Ghats and is about 760 km long. Amravati, Bhavani, Hemvati and Kalini are her major tributaries. Its basin extends in Kerala, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu. It meets the Bay of Bengal to the south of Cuddalore in Tamil Nadu.

There are other smaller rivers which flow eastwards and meet Bay of Bengal. These rivers include Damodar, Brahmani, Vaitarni and Suvarnarekha.

Like to know...

- Hydrosphere exists over about 71 % on the earth's surface.
- About 97 % of it is saline water.
- Only 3 % water is available as fresh water. One-fourth of its portion is in the form of ice.

Lakes

There are many lakes in India. Fresh water lakes are found more in the Himalayan region. Most of the lakes contain water during rainy season. In Kashmir, glacial lakes are formed. A few lakes are formed due to wind, rivers and human actions. In rivers having many meanders, ox-bow lakes are formed. Sea tides have created 'lagoon' lakes. Chilka, Kolleru and Pulicat are examples of this type of lakes. Sambhar lake in Rajasthan is a saline lake and salt is produced from it.

Himalaya has many fresh water lakes which are formed due to glacial action. Water was filled in the depressions which led to the formation of lakes. Beautiful lakes are formed here due to melting of snow. Wular Lake in Kashmir has a tectonic origin. Other fresh water lakes of this area are Dal, Bhimtal, Loktal and Badapani.

Importance of lakes : Lakes are useful to man in many ways. Some rivers have originated from lakes. In the regions which have more rain, more water can be accumulated in the lakes. The accumulated water can be utilised for irrigation and other purposes. The stored water can also be used during drought. Reservoirs and lakes formed due to dam are useful for generating hydel power. Few lakes enhance the natural beauty, hence such lakes have been developed as tourist spots. Lakes are also important for fishery and as tourist resorts.

Economic importance of rivers

Rivers have remained most important during human history. Rivers are the natural resource of water. These are very much important for many human activities. It has satisfied basic need of man. Agriculture and industries have developed due to rivers. Ancient civilizations also flourished along rivers. Major cities have developed along the river banks, e.g. Delhi, Kolkata, Ahmedabad, Bharuch, Surat etc.

River is considered to be the base for an agrarian country like India. In recent times, river water is utilised for drinking, irrigation, hydel power and for navigation.

River – pollution

River water is used more in domestic activities, agriculture and in industrial production. We know the rivers as 'Lokmata', consider it to be very holy, and yet we release industrial effluents in the rivers. The sewage water is dumped into the river near the city. Besides, we also throw solid waste in the river. As a result, the river water is polluted. Thus, water pollution increases due to industrialization and urbanization. Pollution of river water has become our national problem. Government is putting in special efforts to prevent river pollution. At this stage, public participation is equally expected along with the government's efforts.

Measures to prevent water pollution

Rules to prevent water pollution should be implemented very strictly. Water purification projects must be implemented through National River Conservation Project. Strict rules should be formed to prevent industrial units from releasing industrial effluents in the rivers. Industrial units should filter harmful contents from the chemical effluents before releasing them in the river. In order to keep the river water clean, every citizen should take care not to mix up the domestic waste into the river.

Like to know...

- NCRP (National River Conservation Project)
- National River Conservation Project was introduced at the second stage of Ganga River Purification.

Self study**1. Write short answers for the following questions :**

- (1) Give difference : Himalayan rivers – Peninsular rivers
- (2) Explain : Drainage Pattern and Water Divide
- (3) Explain the utility of lakes
- (4) State the remedies to prevent water pollution.
- (5) ‘Godavari is named as Ganga of South’ – Give reasons.

2. Answers the following :

- (1) Explain the Ganga River System.
- (2) Discuss the Narmada basin.
- (3) Describe in detail the Krishna and Kaveri basins.

3. Find out the correct option from the given options :

- (1) Which lakes are formed due to meandering of rivers ?
(A) Lagoon (B) Ox-bow (C) Oval-shape (D) square
- (2) What is it called when a mountain or an upland separates the water flow of rivers from one another ?
(A) water formation (B) Water divide (C) River system (D) Basin
- (3) Which of the following is not a peninsular river ?
(A) Godavari (B) Krishna (C) Kosi (D) Kaveri
- (4) Which of the following lakes is used for producing salt ?
(A) Dhebar (B) Sambhar (C) Wuler (D) Nal
- (5) Which are the main tributaries of Ganga ?
(A) Yamuna, Ghaghra, Gandak and Kosi (B) Yamuna, Chambal, Ghaghra and Kosi
(C) Yamuna, Ghaghra, Sharavati and Kosi (D) Narmada, Ghaghra, Gandak and Kosi

Activities

- Prepare charts about the rivers and the multi-purpose projects.

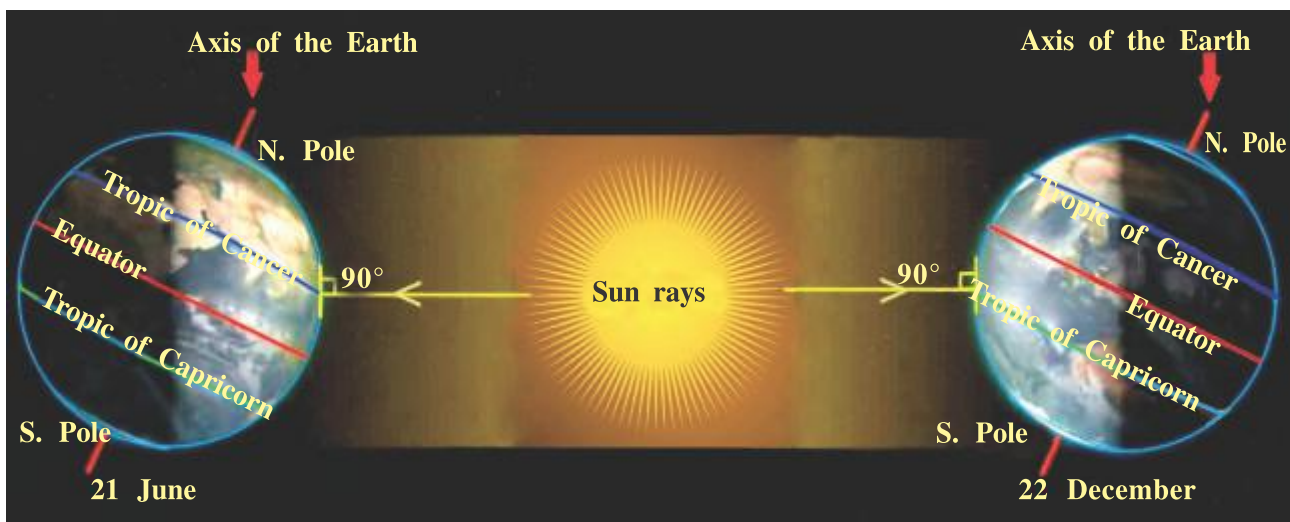
Climate is an average of atmospheric conditions over a long period. Generally, climate is determined from the average weather conditions of summer, winter and rainy season of a place for about 35 years or more. In short, climate is an average of long term atmospheric conditions.

Weather is an average of short term conditions of atmosphere. Weather can change at any time during a day. Change in weather conditions depends on air temperature, air pressure, humidity, rain, fog or amount of clouds etc. Weather affects our daily agricultural activities. Indian Meteorological Department publishes a daily weather map and a Report of the entire nation.

India shows a large diversity and characteristics in climatic conditions. Seasons change in some parts of the earth according to the wind direction. So the winds which change their direction according to the season are called 'Monsoon winds'. These winds are so named after the Arabic word '**Mausim**'. India, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Pakistan and Myanmar are Asian countries which experience monsoon climate.

Seasonal changes

Revolution of the earth around the sun and her axial tilt are major reasons for changes in seasons. The axis of the earth is tilted at 23.5° and makes an angle of 66.5° with the orbit. Seasons are caused due to the axial tilt. Regions receiving more sun light experience summer while regions receiving less sun light experience winter. Sun rays fall vertically over Tropic of Capricorn on 22nd December, so the southern hemisphere experiences summer and the northern hemisphere experiences winter. Nights in India are longer and colder in winter. Similarly, the sun rays are vertical over Tropic of Cancer on 21st June, so the days are longer.



16.1 Changing Seasons

Rotation and revolution of the earth have a direct impact on the food, clothing and residences of man. In monsoonal countries like India, the winter and summer monsoon winds which change direction according to the season, affect the seasonal weather, and give peculiar characteristics to the weather of every season. That is why the climate is called 'monsoonal climate'.

Variations in the climates of India

There are many variations in the climate of India. South India has a peninsular shape, hence it experiences moderate maritime climate, while the climate becomes more continental while going away from the sea shore. A large part of North India is away from the sea coast so it experiences continental climate. The Tropic of Cancer passes almost through middle of

India. Area to the south of it falls in torrid zone while the area to the north of it is in temperate zone. As a result, there is a large difference in the temperature and rainfall in different parts of the country, e.g. the temperature in Leh and Dras in north in Kashmir is as low as -45°C during winter. Sri Ganganagar and Alwar in Rajasthan record 51°C high temperature during summer. Similarly, Cherrapunji in Meghalaya in East India gets about 1200 cm rainfall annually which is maximum in the world. Mawsinram, about 16 km away from Cherrapunji, is famous for receiving maximum rainfall during twenty four hours. In the west, the deserts of Rajasthan receive only 10 to 12 cm rainfall annually. Contradicting climatic conditions are seen in our country when one region has devastating floods while the other faces drought due to intense heat and scanty or absence of rainfall. Some regions face devastating effects of thunderstorms, sandstorms and tropical cyclones. Thus seasonal weather has diversified effects.

Factors affecting the climate

There are some factors on the surface of the earth which control the distribution and amount of elements of climate. These are called climatic factors. Following factors affect the climate of India.

Latitude : Climatic type on the surface of the earth changes according to the latitude of the place concerned. There is a distance of about 111 kilometres between two successive latitudes. Sun rays fall vertically over equatorial region hence it is very hot throughout the year. India is divided into two zones of different climatic conditions, viz. torrid zone and temperate zone .

Distance from sea : The distance of landmass from sea is another important factor affecting the climate. Water and land have different capacity to conserve and release the solar heat. As a result, coastal regions experience temperate climate, while the climate becomes continental in the interior places away from sea coast. The climate of Mumbai in India is temperate as it is near the sea coast, while it is continental at Nagpur or Delhi as these places are far away from sea.

Altitude : As we go higher in the atmosphere from sea level , air pressure and air temperature decrease, while higher relief gets more rain. Due to the high altitude, the Himalayan peaks remain snow covered throughout the year. Moist air cools down when it rises and gives rain. With increasing altitude of the mountains in Meghalaya, the rainfall increases. In general, air temperature decreases @ 1°C for the ascent of 165 metres or by 6.5°C for an ascent of every 1000 metres from the surface of the earth.

Atmospheric pressure and winds : India falls in the path of north- east trade winds. These winds originate due to tropical high pressure belt in northern hemisphere. These winds deflect due to coriolis force and blow towards equator. In past, these winds were utilised for oceanic trade, so these are called 'Trade Winds'. As these winds blow over landmass, they contain less moisture. The Indian Ocean is located to the south of India, Arabian Sea lies to the west and bay of Bengal is in the east. Due to this vast water mass, the winds passing over them absorb moisture and bring rain in India.

During winter, high pressure develops to the north of Himalayas. Cold and dry winds from this region blow towards the oceanic area where low pressure is created. During summer, low pressure develops due to high temperature over central Asia and Indian landmass. At this time, high pressure prevails over Indian Ocean in south, so winds tend to blow from the high pressure over Indian Ocean to low pressure in North India. These winds are known as 'South-West Monsoon Winds'. They contain moisture and bring rain in India.

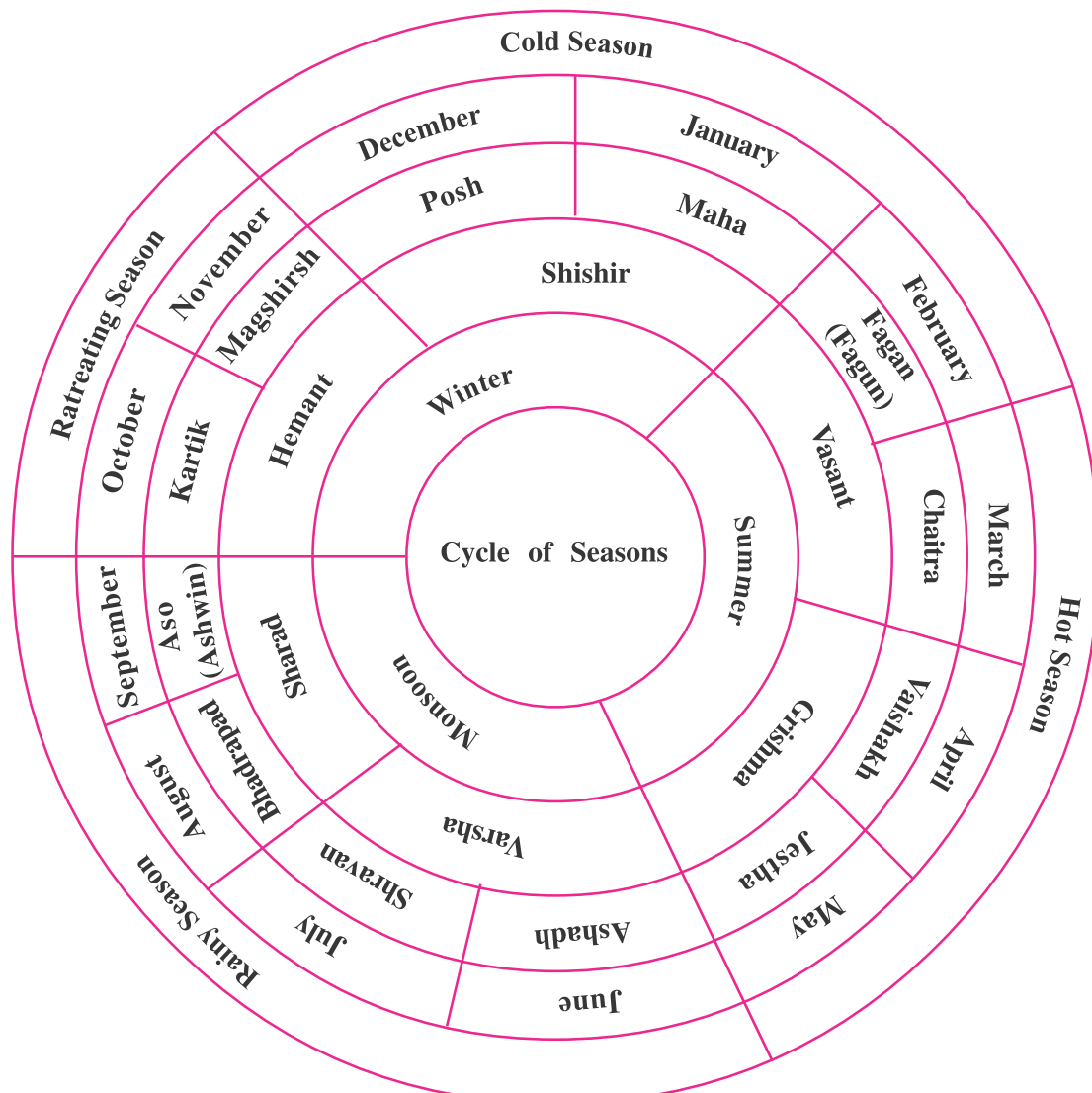
Sometimes a peculiar phenomena takes place over places located far from India which creates temporary changes in the long term climatic pattern. Phenomena like **Jet Stream, Western Disturbances, El- Nino, I.T.C.Z.** have affected the Indian weather to a great extent. However, the monsoonal characteristics of climate of India remain unaffected.

Seasons of India

Weather in our country remains almost the same for every two months. These two months duration is called 'season'. As per tradition, there are six seasons in India. These are : Hemant, Shishir, Vasant, Grishma, Varsha and Sharad. There is hardly any noticeable difference in the weather between two successive seasons. So if two seasons are taken simultaneously, then there would be only three seasons of the year : (1) Cold season (2) Hot season (3) Rainy season. Changes in seasons are experienced distinctly in India. Cold weather starts with the beginning of winter. Temperature gradually increases during summer. With the onset of monsoon, air gathers moisture and brings rain.

Indian Meteorological Department of Government of India at Delhi has divided the climate of India into four seasons :

- (1) Cold Weather season – Winter – December to February
- (2) Hot Weather season – Summer – March to May
- (3) Advancing Monsoon – Rainy season – June to September
- (4) Retreating Monsoon season – October to November



16.2 Seasons of India

Cold Weather season – Winter (December to February)

In India, the three months' duration from December to February is considered as winter. Sun shines vertically over the southern hemisphere between 22nd September to 21st March. India is situated in northern hemisphere, so it is under the influence of slant sun rays between December to February and low temperature prevails. Winds blow from north-east direction from Central Asia. These winds are dry and cold, so the weather also remains dry and cold. The sky during this season generally remains clear (cloudless).

North-East India remains comparatively cooler as it is far away from the sea and some part of it is a desert. During winter this region develops high pressure and this deflects the winds. Dry and cool winds are generated due to the high pressure. These winds reduce the temperature of the places over which they blow. In Delhi, temperature often goes below 10° c during winter and it remains around 16° c in Allahabad and 18° c in Kolkata. At this time the temperature in Himalayas is much less. The January temperature of Shimla, Darjeeling is around 5° c. After the snowfall in Himalayas, the cold and heavy winds rush towards the North Indian plains. As a result, this plain along with Gujarat and Rajasthan are under the grip of cold wave. Temperature decreases suddenly. Frost in some area destructs the cotton crop. Temperature does not fall below freezing point during winter except for the high mountainous regions, because the Central Himalayas obstruct the extremely cold winds coming from Central Asia and protects India from severe cold.

Like to know...

Let us know certain weather terms appearing frequently in the newspapers in India....

Jet Stream

In both hemispheres around 30° latitudes, very powerful winds in a pipe shaped belt blow with high speed in the atmosphere at an altitude of 8 to 15 km. These winds are known as 'Jet Streams'. Their average velocity is about 150 km/per hour and in the central part of this wind belt, their velocity is about 400 km. During winter these winds blow over the southern slopes of Himalayas and in summer, these are stationed over peninsular India. High altitude winds help to bring rain.

Western Disturbances

Jet Stream formed over West Asia blows towards east and affects West Asian countries, North-East India, Pakistan and Afghanistan. The dust storms accompanying these disturbances leave their effect up to Bangladesh. This often creates disturbances in the pleasant winter weather of North India. Very high mountains receive snowfall and the plains receive some rain which is useful to the Rabi crop. This may cause unseasonal rain, locally known as 'mavthu', in Gujarat which may damage crops.

Conditions in South India during winter are different from those in North India. South India is situated in torrid zone, near the equator and has a peninsular shape. Its inner area is not very far from sea coast. So this area does not feel severe cold as the Northern India during winter. There is no snowfall. Temperature also does not go down very low, e.g. the temperature at Kochi during January is around 26° C, Madurai is 25° C and Chennai is 24° C but the mountainous area in South India feel low temperature. Temperature decreases towards north. In India winter is considered to be very pleasant and healthy season. Due to longer and cooler nights, dew and fog are common in early morning. Day is shorter and night is longer. In winter, dry winds coming from over landmass generally do not bring rain, but North-East winds coming over from Bay of Bengal contain humidity. These winds give more rainfall over the Coromandel coast. North-east gets some rainfall due to the western disturbances and thunder storms. This rain is very useful for the Rabi crop in Punjab and Haryana. These winds give rain in Gujarat occasionally. This unseasonal rain in Gujarat is locally called 'mavthu'.

Like to know...

Let us know some frequently used words in the newspapers about Indian weather...

(El-Nino)

This is a Spanish word which literary means a 'small child'. The name was given by Peruvian fishermen after the child Jesus, because its impact is generally felt around Christmas. This warm current originates to the west of Peru along the Pacific coast in South America due to atmospheric and oceanic conditions. This current flows westwards and its impact is felt up to India. The El-Nino phenomena takes place occasionally. Whenever it takes place, changes occur in the duration of monsoon and amount of rainfall in India.

(ITCZ)

A large low pressure area develops over the equator where the Trade Winds converge. It is called Inter Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ). The Trade winds rise upwards in the form of air currents. In July this Convergence zone is stationed over 20° to 25° north latitude. In India, it is stable over Ganga plains. Due to the low pressure developed over this region, winds generated over the oceans in southern hemisphere blow towards this area, causing rain in few parts of North India. During colder season, the Convergence zone, shifts further south, so the winds change their direction to north-east.

Warm Weather season – summer (Grishma season)

In India the warm and dry season between March to May is called 'Summer'. During this period the sun rays fall vertically from south to north gradually and the landmass becomes warmer. Temperature increases continuously. The month of March is the hottest month in southern India. Temperature exceeds 40°C at many places. Central and North-East India experience maximum temperature during April and May. At some places, the temperature reaches around 45° C to 50° C. Thus, entire nation experiences very high temperature during summer. Due to the altitude of peninsula and the plateau, the summer in south India is little mild. Compared to North India, the temperature here remains low. While the temperature in Delhi and Allahabad is 34° C, it is 30° C at Madurai and 27° C at Bengaluru. Thus physical features and sea seem to have dominating effects on the temperature in south.

Like to know...**Norwester**

The low pressure pocket over north and north-east India is spread up to Bihar due to which some parts of Odisha and Jharkhand become more hot occasionally. It is known as **Norwester**. These winds are known as '**kaal Baisakhi**' locally and cause much damage in eastern India.

Loo

In the arid regions of west and north-west India, sandstorms or thunderstorms are common. In summer, especially in May, very hot winds blow over North India which are known as 'Loo'. Due to the excessive heat many people and animals die.

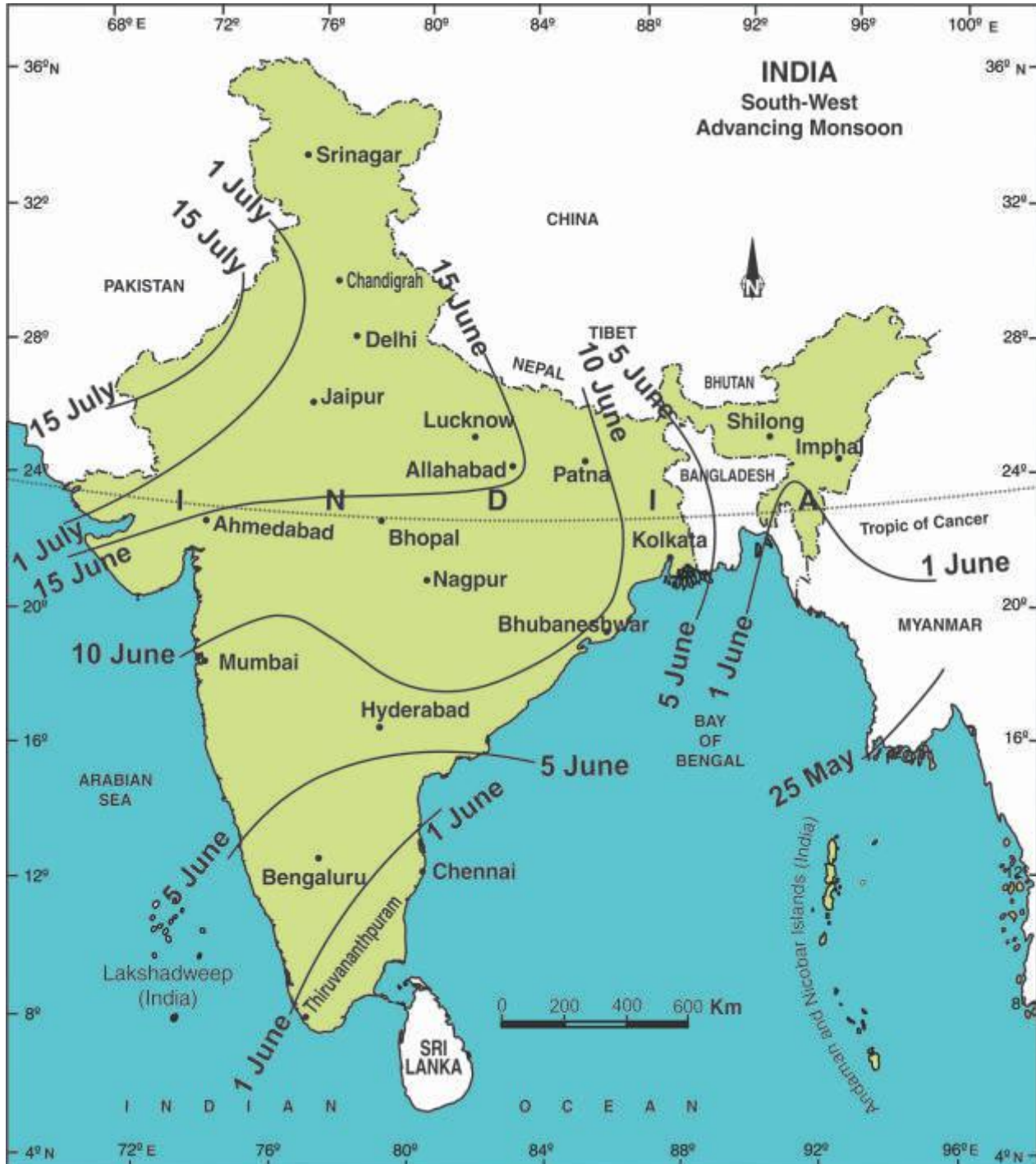
During this season, tropical cyclones develop over Bay of Bengal and over Arabian Sea, advance towards coastal area and cause devastating effects over coastal regions. Most of the country experiences hot and dry weather during summer. Most of the places do not receive any rain in this season, but sometimes Malabar coast gets some rain which helps the mango crop. So it is called 'AmraVrushti'. This is useful to mango and coffee crops.

The Advancing Monsoon (Rainy season – June to September)

India is an agrarian country and so the rainy season is very important season for India. About 80 % of the rainfall country is received between June to September. Indian farmer is busy in farming from the beginning of the rainy season. South-West monsoon winds are responsible

for the rain in this season and the humid and cloudy weather. That is why this is also known as season of 'South-West Monsoon winds'. Almost entire India gets rainfall due to these winds.

By the end of May, a low pressure develops due to high temperature over India and Central Asia. At this time, Indian Ocean in the south develops high pressure, so winds blow towards northern low pressure pockets. The summer monsoon winds blow from the ocean towards India. As these winds are moisture laden, they bring rain.



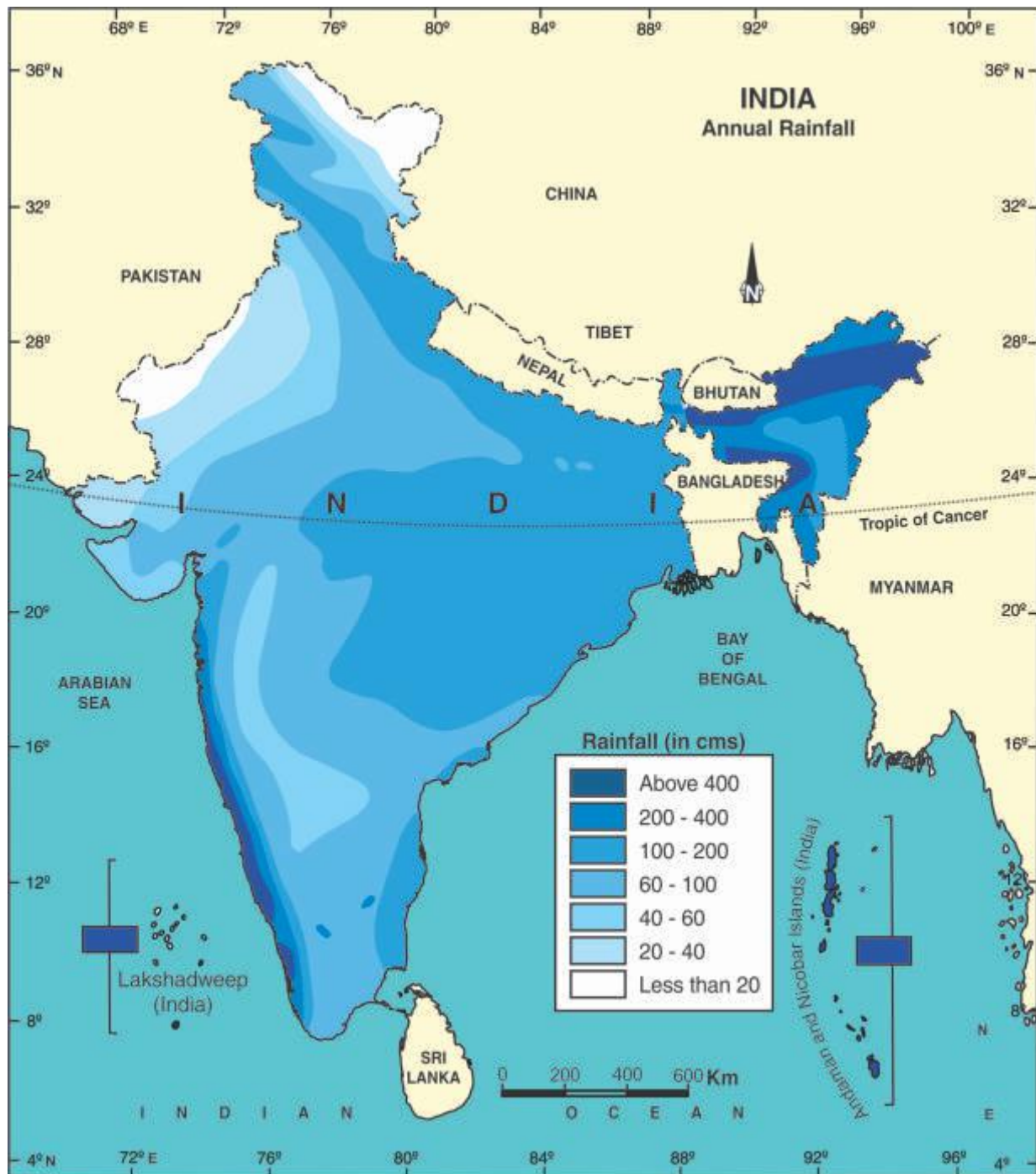
16.3 India : South-West Advancing Monsoon

Due to the peninsular shape of South India, the South-West monsoon winds are divided into two parts : (1) Arabian Sea Current, and (2) Bay of Bengal Current.

Arabian Sea Current

Generally the monsoon in India starts in the beginning of June at Kerala in South India. Western Ghats obstruct the south-west monsoon winds coming over from Arabian Sea. So the entire coast on western slopes of the Ghats receives heavy rain. When these winds cross Western Ghats and reach the peninsular plateau, most of its moisture is reduced. Hence this leeward region gets less rain. Mumbai gets more than 200 cm rain while Pune, which is little farther, gets about 75 cm rain.

Rain decreases northwards from Kerala to Karnataka, Goa and Maharashtra on western coast. One branch of this current enters Madhya Pradesh through the Narmada valley. This current further merges with the winds coming over from Bay of Bengal. One branch of this Arabian current passes over Gujarat, Saurashtra, and Kachchh and advances towards Rajasthan. There



16.4 India : Annual Rainfall

are no high mountains or dense forests in Gujarat, so there is less possibility of the condensation of their moisture in these winds. After giving rain in Gujarat, when these winds enter Rajasthan, they contain less moisture so Rajasthan gets less rain. Deserts get even less than 10 cm rainfall.

Bay of Bengal Current

Second branch of the south—west monsoon winds first enters West Bengal and then reaches up to Meghalaya. These winds contain maximum moisture which give heavy rain in Meghalaya. The slopes of Khasi, Garo and Jaintia hills receive heavy rainfall. Winds here deflect and blow from south-east. They cross over West Bengal, Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab and reach Haryana. Their moisture content decreases, so the regions which fall in its way first get more rainfall and gradually the last regions get less rainfall. Further, both these currents, coming from Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal, merge giving good amount of rain in northern Himalayan region. Snowfall occurs there occasionally.

Along with the monsoon winds, cyclones originating over the Bay of Bengal and the Arabian Sea also enter India. Due to this, monsoon becomes more active in some area. During monsoon season, an average of five to six cyclones pass through India and help in bringing rainfall. India receives her rain through monsoon winds. But these winds do not blow throughout the year and from the same direction. The onset of these winds is also irregular. The phenomena of '**Rain Break**' is associated with the monsoon winds. The monsoon rain falls for many days, but there are few rainless days and again it is followed by a spell of rain. This phenomena is called Rain break. There is also a variation in the physical features in our country. All these factors affect the distribution of rainfall. These factors have made the amount and the distribution of rainfall unequal in India. Assam and Meghalaya receive very heavy rainfall while the deserts in Rajasthan and Leh in Kashmir receive insignificant rain.

Retreating Monsoon (October – November)

Duration between October and November is better known as Retreating Monsoon. The vertical sunrays gradually shift southwards and create low pressure over Indian Ocean in south. High pressure develops gradually over North India. By the end of September a fresh pressure system develops over Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal which weakens the monsoon winds which have already reached the interior part of India. When the pressure conditions change afterwards, these winds start flowing back towards the sea during October – November. So this period is called season of '**Retreating Monsoon**'. At this time, a season of dry and cool winds starts instead of hot summer. Clear sky and increasing temperature are main characteristics of retreating monsoon winds. Soil contains moisture, day time temperature increases, night is cool and pleasant. Day time weather is very perplexing due to high temperature and humidity. This situation is known as '**October Heat**'. In Gujarat, it is locally known as '**Bhadarvi Taap**'.

Climate and Human Life

The climate of India is of monsoonal type. Irregularity and uncertainty are its characteristics which have a profound impact on climate and the food, life style, nature of people and agriculture. Besides being an agrarian country, India is under the total control of monsoon climate. So the impact of all the uncertainties of these monsoon winds is seen on the agriculture and human life in India. Following are the major impacts of climate on human life.

Due to high temperature during most of the year in India, a large variety of crops can be cultivated. But the uncertainty of rains has resulted into unpredictable production. Most of the rain falls between June and September. So where irrigation is not possible, only one crop can be taken depending on rainfall. The beginning as well as end of rainy season is uncertain, so many a

times, water is not available to crops at proper time. This delay causes destruction of seeds and crop production. Sometimes there is a heavy downpour of rain in shorter time. This also destroys crops. Rivers get flooded and cause soil erosion which in long term reduces crop production. When the rainy season is over, it creates employment problems for agricultural labourers. As the farming is not a year long work, many agricultural labourers migrate to cities. Due to irregular rain, some agro-based industries face problems as they do not get their raw material like cotton, sugarcane, tobacco etc. Problem of drinking water also becomes acute due to irregular rain. Life in desert or mountainous region becomes full of hardships, which directly affects people's food, clothing, occupation etc.

Like to know...

Indian Meteorological Department

The Indian Meteorological Department transmits the weather news of our country on radio, television and publishes them in newspapers as well as on websites. The Office was established in 1875 at Kolkata. Its main office was in Pune till 2005 and now it is shifted to New Delhi. Its other six regional offices are located at Chennai, Guwahati, Kolkata, Mumbai, Pune and Nagpur, and also in every state capital. IMD has established Observation stations from India up to Antarctica. A weather forecast is made based on the information collected from these stations.

Self study

1. Answer the following questions in brief :

- (1) Himalaya is a natural wall which protects India. How ?
- (2) Explain the 'Trade Winds'.
- (3) Into how many parts has the Indian Meteorological Department divided the seasons of India ? Which are they ?
- (4) Into how many branches are the North-West monsoon winds divided ? Which are they ?

2. Answer the following questions as directed :

- (1) What changes occur with the increase in altitude from sea level ?
- (2) What is meant by 'October Heat' ?
- (3) Over which regions do the monsoon winds coming over from the Bay of Bengal give rain ?
- (4) Which phenomena of far distant place affect the climate of India ?

3. Give a to-the-point answer of the following questions :

- (1) Due to which reasons does the phenomena of change in season occur ?
- (2) State briefly the factors affecting the climate.
- (3) Write notes on the cold weather season – winter – of India .
- (4) Describe the effects of climate on human life.

4. Select the correct option for the following questions and write its serial number in the given against them :

(1) When the sunrays are vertical over the Tropic of Cancer in India, which season is experienced there ?

- (A) Cold season (B) Hot season
(C) Rainy season (D) Retreating monsoon

(2) Which place near Cherrapunji is famous for heavy rains ?

- (A) Shillong (B) Guwahati (C) Imphal (D) Mawsynram

(3) Which Himalayan phenomena affects more in creating cold wave over Gujarat and Rajasthan in winter ?

- (A) Snowfall (B) Sandstorm (C) Rainfall (D) Landslide

(4) By which name are some showers along Malabar coast in May known as ?

- (A) Anarvarsha (B) Duststorms (C) Amravarsha (D) Snowfall

(5) Which is the season of Retreating Monsoon in India ?

- (A) March – May (B) October – November
(C) January – February (D) July – August

(6) Which of the following statements is true ?

- (A) Days are longer and nights are shorter in winter.
(B) Days are shorter and nights are longer in summer.
(C) Days are shorter and nights are longer in winter.
(D) Days are shorter and nights are longer in summer.

Activity

- Take a globe and try to understand the phenomena of changing seasons.
- Prepare a seasonwise chart of your food which you take during different seasons.
- Note the figures of temperature of different cities shown in news, and show them in the map of India.
- Discuss with your teacher as to why is there a small difference in the traditional six seasons of India every year with reference to English months ?
- Visit the website <http://www.imd.gov.in/> of Indian Meteorological Department and gather information about the maps of India.



Vegetation is an important part of human life. It is difficult to imagine life without vegetation. Its importance has been accepted by our ancient scriptures and by modern science.

India has a large diversity of natural vegetation. In terms of vegetation diversity, India holds tenth position in the world and fourth in Asia. A forest is a group of trees, and those trees which grow in natural condition without human help are called Forest.

Natural Vegetation

The diversity in natural vegetation of India is created due to the following reasons :

(1) Relief features (2) Soil (3) Temperature (4) Insolation (sunshine) (5) Rainfall (6) Humidity

Due to the diversified relief like mountains, plateaus, plains, deserts etc. a diverse pattern in vegetation is seen in India. There are different soils e.g. alluvial, black, mountain, desert type etc. in India. This variation in soils also creates differences in vegetation. The difference in temperature and humidity in cold Himalayan regions and in southern peninsular region also bring variations in vegetation. The insolation over any place depends on its latitude and altitude. Vegetation grows faster where there is more rain and insolation. Thus, there is a diversity in vegetation due to sunshine. Rainfall distribution in India is also unequal which in turn causes diversity in vegetation.

There are about 5000 varieties of trees in India, out of which 450 trees are useful commercially. Besides, about 15,000 flowering plants also grow which form about 6 % of the world. Non-flowering plants like fern, algae, moss etc. are also available in our country. India is famous since ancient times for the herbal plants. About 2000 medicinal plants are described in Ayurved. Thus it can be said that India has a diversity in vegetation.

Types of Natural Vegetation

Existence and growth of any vegetation depends on the climate of a region. In the regions of identical climate, the vegetation seen is mostly identical. Regions of such ecological similarities are called natural Vegetation Regions.

On the basis of altitude, soils, rainfall and differential temperature, the natural vegetation regions can be divided into five types :

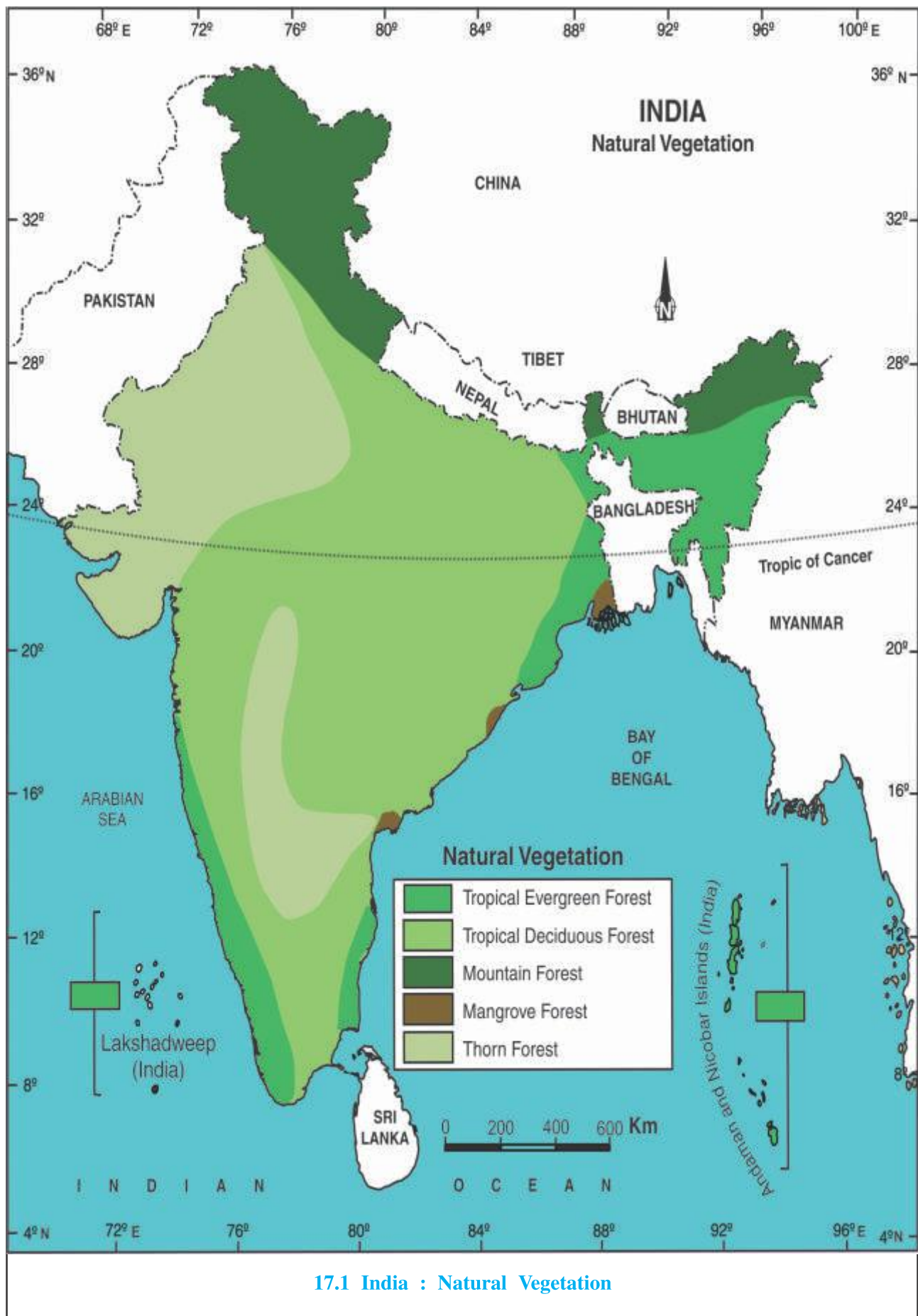
(1) Tropical Rain Forests (2) Tropical Deciduous Forests (3) Tropical Desert Vegetation
(4) Temperate Forests and Grasslands (5) Mangrove (Tidal) Forests.

(1) Tropical Rain Forests :

Distribution : Tropical Rain Forests are found in hot and humid regions where annual rainfall exceeds 200 cm and temperature is more than 22° C. Such forests are found in area of heavy rainfall of Western Ghats, Lakshadweep, Andaman – Nicobar Islands, upper regions of Assam, coastal Tamil Nadu.

Trees : Trees found here are Mahogany, Ebony, Rosewood, rubber etc.

Characteristics : Trees here are about 60 metres tall or even more. There is more humidity due to scrubs. There is no season here like autumn. As these trees are evergreen, the forests are also called Evergreen Forests.



(2) Tropical Deciduous Forests :

Distribution : Generally, such forests are found in the regions receiving about 70 to 200 cm rainfall. Such forests are found in North – Eastern States, Himalayan foothills. Western Odisha, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, eastern slopes of Eastern Ghats, Vindhya and Satpuda ranges. There is a large proportion of these forests in India.

Trees : Major trees found here are teak, saal, sesame, sandalwood, kher (acacia catechu) bamboo etc.

Characteristics : A major characteristic of the trees here is that the trees shed their leaves for 6 to 8 weeks during autumn. Every species has a different time to shed the leaves, so all the trees are never without leaves during any particular season. As these trees shed their leaves according to seasons, these are also called Monsoon forests.

(3) Tropical Desert Vegetation :

Distribution : Generally, such forests are found in the regions receiving less than 70 cm of rainfall. These are found in North-Western region, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh etc.

Trees : Dates, jujube, acacia, cactus, khijdo etc. are common trees found here.

Characteristics : The roots of the trees and plants here are long, deep and widespread. Leaves are shorter which result in slower evapotranspiration process.

(4) Temperate Forests and Grasslands (Himalayan Vegetation) :**Vegetation on Himalayas**

Height	Areal span	Forests	Trees
1000 to 2000 metres	High mountains of north-east, West Bengal and mountainous area of Uttarakhand	Tropical forests	Oak and chestnut
1500 to 3000 metres	Southern slopes of Himalayas, higher areas of south and North-East	Coniferous forests	Pine, saal, silver fir spruce
3600 metres and more	Higher altitude in Himalaya and near snow line	Alpine and short grass (Tundra vegetation)	Silver fir and birch

A major characteristic of the coniferous forests is that the trees have conical shape. Their branches lean towards the surface so that the snow would easily slide down towards the land. Tree leaves are long, pointed and sticky which can conserve humidity for longer time

(5) Tidal Forests (Mangroves) :

Distribution : Tidal forests are located in the delta regions of rivers along the coast. These forests are found along Gujarat coast and in the marshy lands along the Bay of Bengal coast.

Trees : Sundari and cher.

Forest products and their utility

Forests are useful to mankind in many ways. Timber wood from teak and saal is used for furniture making. Boats are prepared from the wood of sundari trees of Sundarvan. Sports goods and packing boxes are prepared from the wood of pine and chid trees. Turpentine is prepared from the liquid from chid trees. Sandalwood is used to prepare perfumed oil, cosmetics etc. Baskets, toys, goods of home decoration etc. are made from bamboo trees. Forests also provide lac (sealing wax), resin, gum, rubber, honey, cane etc. Amla (embellicmyrobalan), baheda, harde, ashvagandha etc. hold medicinal utility.

Medicinal Utility of Vegetation	
Vegetation	Medicinal Utility
Sarpagandha	In high blood pressure
Limdo	As bacterial resistant
Tulsi	Cold, cough and fever
ArjunSadam	Treatment for heart ailments
Bili	Gas and cough impurities
Galo	Diabetes, fever, joint pain
Harde	Constipation, hair diseases
Amla	Cures gas, acidity, digestive
Karanj	Skin and dental - gum diseases

Besides leaf plates from khakhro leaves, catechu from kher tree, bidi from timru leaves are also prepared. Forests provide livelihood and food to forest dwellers. This way, forests contribute into the social and economic development of mankind.

Environmental Importance of Forests :

The environmental importance of forests is as follows :

- Forests are useful to bring rain.
- They controls the atmosphere from becoming adverse.
- They provide life saving oxygen.
- Forests control the floods.
- They absorb harmful gases like carbon dioxide.
- Forests prevent soil erosion.
- Forests maintain ground water.
- Forests restrict the advancing deserts.
- Forests are useful in reducing air pollution.
- Forests enhance the natural beauty.
- Forests purify the air.
- Forests are ideal places for adventurous, tourism activities.
- Some forests are reserved with reference to National Parks and Sanctuaries and bio diversity.

Forest conservation

Ecosystem is formed due to the interrelation of biosphere and mankind. But due to the anti-environmental activities and selfishness of man, the ecosystem is disturbed. Man's insatiable

desire to procure land is responsible for the destruction of forests. Forests are destroyed also by increasing population, policy of establishing industrial units away from residential areas, urbanization, multi-purpose projects, construction of roads, jhoom cultivation, to get timber and fuel wood, forest fire etc. Ecological balance is disrupted due to the destruction of forests.

Adverse effects are noticed due to forest destruction. These include decrease in rainfall, drought, global warming, green house effects, advancing deserts, homelessness of wild animals etc.

According to the National Policy of 1952, there must be forests over 33 % of the total geographical area of the nation. In India, forests are spread over about 23 % area while forests occupy only about 10 % of land in Gujarat. Thus, it is necessary to prevent destruction of forests, and so protection and conservation of forests is necessary.

Like to know ...

In Gujarat, white khakhro, gugal, nilsoti, sesame, amli, attak, harde etc. are placed in Red data Book of I.U.C.N. (International Union for Conservation of Nature) in 'on verge of extinction' category.

Remedies to conserve forests :

In order to protect and conserve forests, The Government of India implemented a National Forest Policy in 1952. In 1980, the parliament passed Legislative Act and in 1988 a new National Policy was announced. Following steps should be taken to preserve forests.

- (1) Forests are our nation's resource. Take it as our moral duty to protect them.
- (2) Tree felling should be stopped. Heavy punishment must be inflicted to those who cut trees illegally.
- (3) To increase public participation in Van Mahotsav and Social Forestry, trees must be planted on either sides of waste land, river, railway tracks and roads and raise them.
- (4) Create awareness about environment through environmental education and school syllabus, celebrate environment related days.

Like to know...

Environment related days

21 March	-	World Forest Day
22 April	-	Earth Day
5 June	-	World Environment Day
July (month)	-	Van Mahotsav
16 September	-	World Ozone Day

- (5) Take precautions to avoid forest fire, and in case of fire it must be doused immediately.
- (6) Use renewable energy resources such as solar energy, bio energy, wind energy etc. in place of traditional resources like wood used to get energy.
- (7) Explain the importance of forests to people through broadcasting media, and bring public awareness about it.

Like to know...

- The year 2011 was declared as “**World Forest Year**” in order to bring global awareness.
- Social Forestry means to manage forests to help environment, society and rural development, to conserve forests and plant trees.
- F.R.I.(Forest Research Institute) undertakes forest related research.

Self study**1. Answer the following questions in brief :**

- (1) Why a diversity of vegetation is seen in India ?
- (2) What is the environmental importance of forests ?
- (3) What are the reasons for forest destruction ?
- (4) What are the effects of forest destruction ?
- (5) “Tropical Forests are also called Evergreen Forests” – Give reasons.

2. Answer the following questions in details :

- (1) State the types of forests in India.
- (2) Write about the utility of forests.
- (3) Elaborate the remedies for forest conservation.

3. Select a correct option for the following questions and write answer :

- (1) Which place does India hold in world with respect to vegetation diversity ?
(A) First (B) Fourth (C) Tenth (D) Fifth
- (2) Which of the following statement is incorrect ?
(A) Tidal forest is located in Ganga delta.
(B) Turpentine is prepared from liquid of chid tree.
(C) Sundari wood is used to prepare boats.
(D) Thorny bush occur in mountainous area of Himalayan.
- (3) Join the pairs :

A

- (A) Tropical Rain forests
(B) Tropical Desert Vegetation
(C) Tidal Forests
(D) Coniferous Forests

- (A) A-3 B-4 C-1
(B) A-4 B-3 C-1
(C) A-4 B-3 C-2
(D) A-4 B-2 C-3

B

1. Cher
2. Pine
3. Acacia
4. Mahogany

- D-2
D-2
D-1
D-1

- (4) What is prepared out of the liquid of chid ?
(A) Catechu (B) Turpentine (C) Lac (D) Gum

Activity

- Collect photographs of different vegetation and prepare a bulletin explaining its utility.
- Celebrate Van Mahotsav in the school. Let the students plant the trees and name the trees after them.
- On students' birthday, make them take an oath, plant a sapling and encourage them to rear it.
- Arrange drawing, essay and elocution competitions about forest protection and conservation.
- Visit a Van Chetna Kendra located near your village / town.

India has a diversified relief and climate. Similar diversity is seen here in the wild life. In the entire world, about 15 lakh species of wild life are recorded of which 81,251 species are found in India. These include reptiles, mammals, fish and other insects. Explorations continue to identify other animals found in different forests. India is at sixth position among the countries rich in bio-diversity.

India has less forest cover. Compared to that its wild life diversity is noticeable.

Zoo – Geographic Regions of India

Natural vegetation Regions have been devised on the basis of their characteristics. Similarly, a spatial distribution can be made for animals. The wild life of India is divided into 9 zones according to the similarities in their characteristics and their existence in any region : These are as follows :

(1) Himalayas (2) Ladakh and dry cold area (3) Forest cover in lower Himalayas (4) High lands without forest cover in Upper Himalayas (5) Northern Plain (6) Desert of Rajasthan (7) Peninsular Plateau (8) Sea coast and (9) Nilgiri Hills

Bio – diversity is studied according to these Zoo – Geographical regions.

The diversified Wild Life of India

The vast alluvial plains of rivers, peninsular plateau, mountainous regions, swampy areas, sea coasts, dense rain forests, deciduous forests, coniferous forests in Himalayas and other higher regions form a vast background for the habitation of wild life in India. The animals seen are Asian elephant in peninsular rain forests, one horned rhino in swampy Brahmaputra river, snow leopards in higher Himalayas, wild goats and musk deer in Jammu – Kashmir, wild buffalo (Indian Bison), tiger in Central India and West Bengal, Ghudkhar (wildass) in Little Rann of Kachchh and flamingo in water logged Greater Rann. Presence of Great India Bustard in the grassland area is noted again. In the water lodged area, migratory birds from cold regions come down in great number. These include Siberian crane, pelican, Tibetan duck, kunj, karkara etc. Flying squirrels are seen in the dense forests of Western Ghats. Nicobari dove is a rare bird seen in Nicobar island. Rare species of corals are seen in the Gulf of Kachchh and Lakshadweep Islands. Along with mammals and many types of birds, notice should be taken of king cobra, snakes, python, iguana (patlagho) also. Along sea coasts and other water bodies, various fishes, sea snakes, dolphin, shark, dugang (sea cow), octopus, whale etc. form a part of animal world.

Besides forests, animals like fox, wolf, nilgai, deer, mongoose, rabbits, wild hog, hedgehog are seen in agricultural areas. Many birds such as nightingale, parrot, peacock, weaver bird, chibari, pilak, vulture, kabar, dhor bagla etc. are also seen roaming in these areas.

Like to know...

- Crane is the largest bird seen in India.
- Fulsunghano is the smallest bird seen in India.
- Birdwing is the largest butterfly seen in South India.
- Sirasjevel is the smallest butterfly seen in India.

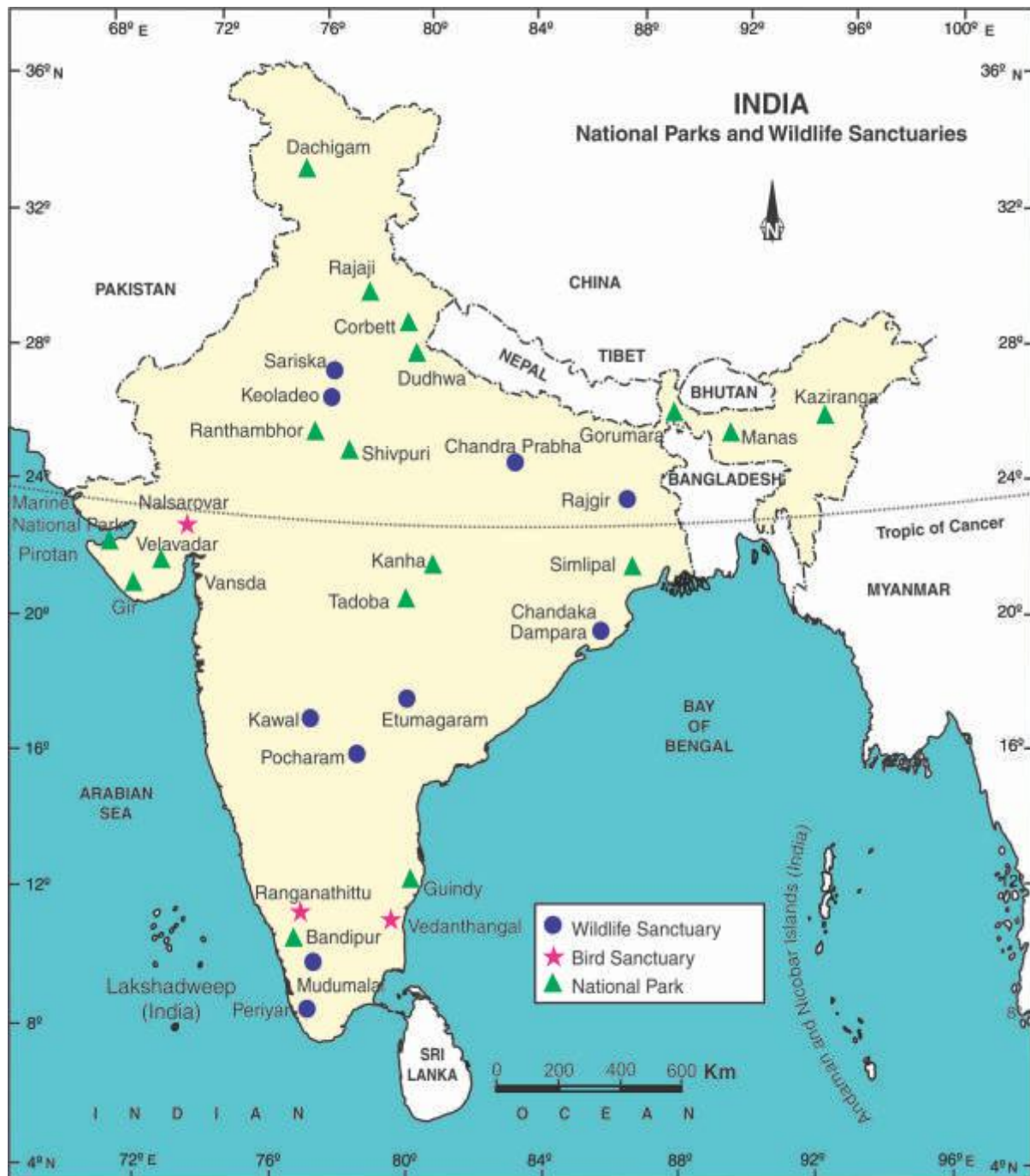
Wild Life and the need for conservation

While going through the past, it becomes evident that there is a danger to the existence of the wild life since last few decades. Before one hundred years thousands of tigers were seen in India. As per the figures of 2014 given by Forest and Environment Ministry, the figure is 2226. Tigers have grown in numbers which is evident from the imprints of their foot taken during last few years. This is a good sign. Vultures are on verge of becoming extinct due to eating the meat which becomes polluted by diclofenac drug used in the treatment of sick milch cattle. Leopards, seen in the forests in the beginning of twentieth century have become extinct from India. Once the Asiatic Lions of Gir which were seen even upto middle east, are now restricted to Gir forests only. With due steps taken for their protection, now their number is 523. Once cranes were seen in large number in Gujarat, but now their number is reduced. Wild life is an inseparable part of the living organisms, but the decrease in their numbers somewhere and for some years reduces the quality of environment, which is a matter of concern. Shyam Garud (eagle), a resident of mountainous forests in Gujarat is now rarely seen. Chiloptro, seen in the forests of Vijaynagar taluka, is rarely seen to-day.

It is obvious that endless human greed and the run for progress, have made environment imbalanced which would bring adverse results. Still there is time. If proper action is not taken then the next generation would see the wild life only in pictures.

Important National Parks and Sanctuaries of India.

Sr. No.	National Park	Sanctuary
1.	Kaziranga (Assam)	Rhino, wild buffalo, deer
2.	Thar Desert (Rajasthan)	Desert wolf, desert cat, bustard
3.	Kanha (Madhya Pradesh)	Tiger, antelope
4.	Gir National Park (Gujarat)	Lion, leopard, chittal
5.	Velavadar Kaliar National Park (Gujarat)	Black buck, wolf, peacock
6.	Kevladev (Bharatpur – Rajasthan)	Birds (migratory and local)
7.	Bandipur (Karnataka)	Elephant, bear, hog, wild cat
8.	Dachigam (Kashmir)	Hamur (Kashmiri deer), musk deer
9.	Corbett (Himalayan foothills)	Tiger, elephant, leopard, deer



18.1 India : National Parks and Sanctuaries

Dangers to Wild Life

A question mark has been put against the existence of entire wild life due to the human greed and development in recent times. On examining the reasons, it is understood that the wild life has become unprotected as they have lost their natural habitat due to continuously decreasing forests. Hunting, carried out to get skin, meat, teeth, hair and bones, is a big problem. Due to heavy grazing by domestic animals in the forests, herbivores are deprived of their food which results in decrease in their numbers. It will deprive carnivores of getting their food. So these carnivores reach human settlements in search of food and attack animals. As they approach human settlements, situation of conflict arises between wild animals and human settlements. This conflict leads the destruction of wild life. Besides, their effects on pollution is also very adverse due to human activities.

Like to know...

- There is a sharp decrease in the number of domestic sparrows.
- Lion is the State Animal and flamingo is State Bird of Gujarat.
- Asiatic Lion, Ghudkhar (wild ass) and Patti lizard are found only in Gujarat in India.
- Wild buffalo (Indian bison), elephant, cheetah, large Indian squirrel, tiger etc. have become extinct in Gujarat.
- Desert Sanctuary of Kachchh has the largest area among the sanctuaries in Gujarat.
- Porbandar Bird Sanctuary is the smallest sanctuary in Gujarat.

Due to the decrease in the forest area, the wild animals occasionally come within the human habitation. Human interference in areas of wild animal results into clashes with them. In such incidences, wild animals become victim of human rage and lose their lives. In South and South-Eastern India, elephants coming to search for food create havoc in the agricultural fields. Incidences of injuring or killing men by leopards take place in Saurashtra and South Gujarat and by wolf in the forests of north-eastern Gujarat. A precaution is necessary to prevent such disasters.

Remedies to conserve Wild Life

A long term planning is necessary to conserve and increase forest areas. We shall have to be more dedicated to implement strong legal provisions and their strict implementation for the conservation of forest areas and wild animals. Various social NGOs should give this a top priority and arrange public awareness programmes. These problems should be included in the school syllabus and make the future citizens aware. Before implementing any developmental project, its probable effects on environment and living organisms should be examined. Cutting of large trees outside the forests area should be stopped, because the hollow space within them and their branches are nesting place for birds. Ponds, farm ponds and wetlands, which are necessary for migratory birds and for those which are habited near any water body, should be protected. An active work is urgently needed to reduce pollution. To manage the forest fire an anticipatory planning should be made for patrolling and safety.

Steps taken to nurture the Wild Life

Since early times, laws have been framed in our country to protect the wild life. Laws were framed to protect wild life in the time of great Maurya King Ashok. Fundamental Duties of citizens and Directive Principles in the constitution also include these things. Parliament has passed a Wild Life Conservation Act according to the recommendations of Indian Wild Life Board. In 2014, there were 503 Sanctuaries, 102 National Parks and 14 bio – reserves. Of these, 22 sanctuaries, 4 national parks and 1 bio reserve zone happen to be in Gujarat. Some protection schemes are planned for those species which are on verge of extinction. Let us know about some of these projects.

Project Tiger : This Project was launched in 1973 against hunting and decreasing number of tigers. This was implemented for 9 reserved areas, under which now 48 areas are covered.

Lion Project : There was a time when Asiatic Lions were found up to Iran in the Asian subcontinent. Due to hunting and the reduction in forest area, these lions are now restricted to Gir forests of Saurashtra Peninsula. At one stage, their number had gone below 100. In 1972, a project was started in Gir to protect the Asiatic Lions. As a result of this Project and the timely taken steps, there are now 523 lions according to the Lion Census held in 2015.

In addition to this, there are other projects also. Major projects among them are **Hangool Project** for the rare species of Barasinga deer in Kashmir, **Crocodile Project** for saline water crocodiles, **Rhino Project** for the protection of Indian Rhino and **Snow Leopard Project**.

Wild life conservation is possible only if the society and the Government show firm determination to take steps in right direction. Along with the development, we shall have to be dedicated to confirm our motto of environment preservation.

Like to know...					
National Parks of Gujarat					
Sr. No.	National Park	Established	Area	District	Major animals
1.	Gir Nation Park	1975	258.71 Sq. km	Junagadh	Lion, leopard, chittal, hyena, antelope, chinkara, crocodile
2.	Black Buck National Park	1976	34.08 Sq. km	Bhavnagar	Black buck, wolf, khadmor, bustard
3.	Vansda National Park	1979	23.99 Sq. km	Navsari	Leopard, hyena, chittal, chausinga
4.	Marine National Park	1982	162.89 Sq. km	Gulf of Kachchh, Jamnagar	Sea horse, corals, jelly fish, octopus, oyster, dolphin, dugang

Self study

1. Answer the following questions as directed :

- (1) Give a list of Zoo – geographic regions of India.
- (2) Wild Life is in danger to-day – Explain.
- (3) Give brief information about different projects for wild life protection.

2. Answer the following questions in details :

- (1) Bio – diversity of India
- (2) Remedies for wild life conservation

3. Select a proper option and write the answer :

- (1) How many Zoo-geographic regions is India divided into ?
(A) Three (B) Four (C) Six (D) Nine
- (2) How many species of living organisms are recorded in the world ?
(A) 72 Lakhs (B) 15 Lakhs (C) 18 Lakhs (D) 19 Lakhs
- (3) Where are the flying squirrels seen ?
(A) Greater Rann of Kachchh (B) At higher altitude in Himalayas
(C) Marshy land (D) In Western Ghats forests

- (4) Which bird is rarely seen in the mountainous area of Vijaynagar Taluka ?
 (A) Flamingo (B) Chilotro (C) Bustard (D) Parrot
- (5) Rare species of corals....
 (A) Velavadar (B) Nal Sarovar (C) Lakshadweep Islands (D) Gir Sanctuary
- (6) Where are the bustards seen?
 (A) Wet Land (B) Mountainous area
 (C) Marshy Lands (D) Grasslands

Activity

- In the eco-club of your school, observe and prepare a list of the birds seen in your area under the direction of your teacher.
- Prepare a sparrow nest from a blank box and hang it at a proper place under your elders' direction, observe it over a period and keep a note at regular interval.
- Arrange a visit to a natural education centre during the tour of the school.
- Arrange a talk and a question-answer session by a forest officer in the school.
- Paste the cuttings of the news and articles about wild life appearing in the News Papers and Periodicals.
- Under the guidance of your teacher, visit the following websites and gather more information.

- (1) www.envforguj.in
- (2) www.gujaratforest.org
- (3) www.gemi_india.org
- (4) www.wcsindia.org
- (5) www.nationalgeographic.com



We are proud that we are born in India. Our country is situated on the southern side of Asia. It has been gifted by three seasons, cold season, warm season and rainy season with traditional sub divisions of these seasons. Earlier you studied that India is a diversified country with reference to relief features and climate. So many changes are seen in food, dressing, dwellings, language, dialects, festivals, holy days etc. Thus India is a multi-coloured nation showing unity in diversity.

Relief and climate have a clear impact on the food and dress, e.g. the staple food of people living near sea coast is rice and fish. Wheat is the main crop in Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh and Punjab. So people in these regions use wheat preparations. Similarly relief and climate have a strong impact on the dressing. The costume of people in colder and mountainous region is woollen and covers entire body. Similarly people living in a region experiencing high temperature throughout the year put on cotton dresses which are light in colour and are loose. Nowadays men put on pant and shirt and women put on salwar – kameez in every state.

India can be divided into four zones according to life style : Western India, Northern India, Southern India and Eastern India. Now we shall learn about the life style in respective regions.

Life style : Western India

Major states of Western India are Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh and Goa. It also includes Union Territories of Diu-Daman, Dadra and Nagar Haveli.

Food : Staple food in Rajasthan is millet and dal-bati. Marwadi kachori of Rajasthan is a famous item in breakfast. Rotli-bhakhari, vegetables, dal and rice, khichdi and kadhi are main items in the food of Gujarati people. Khaman and ganthia are more preferred as savoury item. Maharashtrians prefer sev-usal. People living along the sea coasts of Gujarat, Maharashtra and Goa eat mainly rice and fish.

Like to know...

Gujaratis are basically traders. As they are required to go to distant places for trading, so durable items for breakfast like thepla, ganthia, dry kachori, khakhro and sukhdhi are more common among them.

Dress : Rajasthan is a dry and desert area hence there is less diversity in vegetation. This defect is overcome by them through colourful dresses. Men generally wear dhoti, angarakhun and colourful head gear (Paghadi), while women put on sari, petticoat and blouse. Traditional dress of men in Maharashtra is dhoti and paheeran, and a cap or a head gear on the head. Women wear sari in Maharashtrian way. The traditional dress in Madhya Pradesh is similar to that of the neighbouring states of Gujarat and Maharashtra. In Goa also, men wear dhoti and paheeran, and women wear sari, petticoat and blouse. However, a strong western impact is seen in the dresses in Goa. Thus, every region has its own characteristics in their dresses.

Traditional dressing of Gujarat : Men put on dhoti, Kurta, white cap or headgear (turban) on head, while women put on sari, petticoat and blouse. The traditional attire for men in Maharashtra is dhoti and paheeran and cap or turban on head, while women put on sari in typical Maharashtrian style. The traditional dressing of people in Madhya Pradesh resembles very much to the neighbouring states Maharashtra and Gujarat. In Goa also, men put on dhoti and paheeran, while women put on sari, petticoat and blouse. However, a western effect is distinctly seen on dressing in Goa. Thus, every region has a traditional characteristics regarding its dressing.

Dwelling : There is less rainfall in Rajasthan due to deserts, so most of the houses have flat top. Rural people live in the houses made of grass and soil. People in Gujarat live in modern types of buildings made from brick – cement. In Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh and Goa also, urban people live in well laid out houses with many modern amenities. In every state, the forest dwellers living in forests or mountainous area stay in scattered huts. Roofs of the buildings in Konkan, which receives heavy rainfall, are slant.

Like to know...

Dwellings in Kachchh (Gujarat) are known as Bhunga. These bhungas were least damaged during the earthquake of 26th January, 2001.

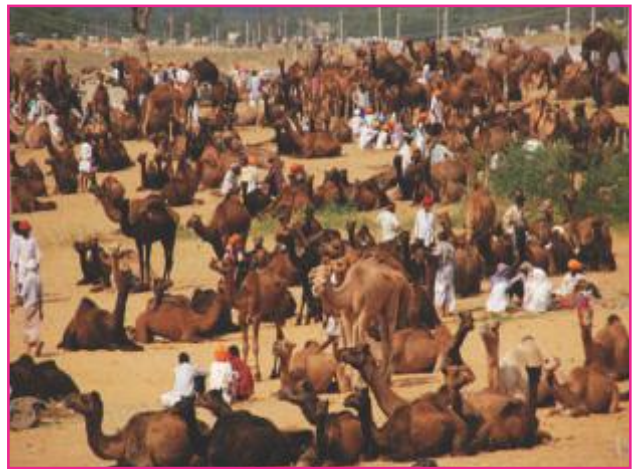
Language : Rajasthani people mainly speak Hindi while Marwadi language is spoken in Marwad. Gujarati is the main language of people in Gujarat, kachchhi dialect is spoken in Kachchh. Hindi is main language in Madhya Pradesh. Marathi and Konkani are also languages spoken in Maharashtra and Goa respectively. Regional dialects are spoken according to the area of respective states.

Festivals and Holy Days : Kalidas, the great poet, has said that human beings are fond of festivals. Indians celebrate many festivals and holydays. Rajasthan has peculiar type of folk songs and folk dances. Festivals of Holi and Ganagaur are celebrated with great pomp. Ghummar, Kachchighodi and Kalbelia are very famous folk dances of Rajasthan. Gujarat is world famous for her raas – garba. Maharashtra celebrates Ganesh Chaturthi festival with great pomp. Besides, its Lavni dance is also very famous. In Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh, the Shiv Ratri is celebrated with much enthusiasm. People in Western India celebrate festivals like Diwali, Navratri, Shivratri, Dashera, Ganesh Chaturthi, Eid, Moharram, Christmas, Mahavir Jayanti, Pateti, Chetti Chand, Buddha Jayanti etc.

Fairs : Pushkar in Rajasthan and Siddhpur in Gujarat are known for their camel trade on Kartik Purnima (Full moon day). A fair is conducted for trading donkeys at Vautha of Dholka taluka in Gujarat. Other famous fairs in Gujarat are Tarnetar Fair near Thangadh, Bhavnaath Fair in Junagadh and Dang Darbar Fair in Dangs. Ujjain in Madhya Pradesh and Nasik in Maharashtra are famous for holding Ardha Kumbha Fair and Goa for Carnivals.

Like to know...

In the Adhik (Additional) Bhadarvo month occurring after every 18 years, a fair is organised at Bhadbhut in Vagra taluka of Bharuch district.



19.1 Pushkar Fair (Rajasthan)

Life style – North India

North India includes the states of Punjab, Haryana, Jammu-Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Delhi etc. Punjab is a land of five rivers. Due to its natural beauty, Jammu-Kashmir is considered to be the heaven of the earth. Uttarakhand is a mountainous region and also known as Devbhumi. Himachal Pradesh is also a mountainous state. Uttar Pradesh is a part of the fertile plain of Ganga-Yamuna. Delhi is the National Capital of India.

Food : Wheat is the staple food in Punjab and Haryana. Punjabi people use tandoori roti made from wheat and a variety of parathas very frequently. Panir based mixed vegetables is a special choice of Punjabis. Lassi is a well known drink in Punjab. Main food of people from Jammu-Kashmir is rice, meat and fish. Roti, daal and rice is the staple food of people in Uttar Pradesh.

Dressing : The dress which Punjabis and Haryanvis put on is known as Punjabi Dress. Women put on salwar and kameez. Men also wear loose shirt (jhabbho) and salwar. Men also put on Punjabi styled head gear. Some people also wear embroidered jacket over the loose shirt. Kashmiri people wear Kashmiri dress, and during winter, they put on clothes covering entire body. The dress in Himachal and Uttarakhand is similar to that of Jammu- Kashmir. Gents put on cap and ladies wear scarf on the head. People in Uttar Pradesh wear dhoti and paheeran and tie a scarf on the head. Ladies wear sari, petticoat and blouse.

Dwelling : Punjab and Haryana get less rainfall, so the buildings there have flat roof tops. Urban people live in the buildings made of bricks and cement. Wood is used more in the construction of houses in Jammu-Kashmir. In Himachal and Uttarakhand, people live in two storeyed buildings. Animals are kept

in the ground floor so that their heat keeps the wooden first floor warmer. Such buildings are useful during snowfall. The roofs are sloppy. Smooth rocks are used as roof tiles so that the snow on the roof tops easily slides down. In Uttar Pradesh urban people live in houses made from bricks and cement.

Language : Punjabi people speak Punjabi language and Haryanvis speak Hariyani language. People in Uttar Pradesh use Hindi and Urdu languages. Urdu is major language in Jammu-Kashmir. Kashmiri and Dongari languages are also spoken there. Besides Hindi, Garhwali and Kumaun dialects are also spoken in Uttarakhand. The State language of Himachal Pradesh is Pahadi. More over, local dialects are spoken in remote area of each state.

Festivals and Holy Days : Baisakhi and Lahiri are major festivals in Punjab. Bhangda is a famous folk dance of Punjab. Eid and Moharram festivals are celebrated in Jammu-kashmir. Dashera is celebrated in a special way in Kullu of Himachal Pradesh. Holi is the major festival in Uttar Pradesh. Kathak is a well known dance style of Uttar Pradesh. Besides, festivals like Shiv Ratri, Ram Navami, Janmashtami, Dashera, Eid, Moharram, Christmas etc. are more celebrated festivals.

Fairs : Kullu's Dashera Fair is a well known fair. In Punjab, a Martyrs Fair is held. Kumbh Mela and Magh Mela are famous fairs of Allahabad in Uttar Pradesh. In Uttarakhand, Kumbh and Ardh Kumbh fairs are famous.



19.2 KumbhMela (Allahabad)

Life Style – South India

The states of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Union Territory of Puducherry are included in South India. Southern India is a peninsula and each state has sea coast.

Food : In southern states, rice and fish form the main diet. Idli, dhosa, meduvada etc. along with the coconut chutney are famous rice preparation of South India. They eat 'Rasam' which is like daal (gravy) in their meal. Coconut leaves are used as dish in Kerala.

Dressing : Due to hot and humid weather in south, people wear loose garments. Lungi, paheran, khes on the shoulder and occasionally a head gear are common attire among men. Women wear sari in southern style, petticoat and blouse. Keralites wear lungi or short dhoti. Ladies put on flower strips (veni) on their head.

Dwellings : People live in houses of brick and cement. Modern housing is seen in Bengaluru and Chennai. People living near sea coast use coconut leaves in their huts. A rangoli is a daily routine in South India.

Language : Languages in South India belong to Dravid Family of languages. Kannad language is spoken in Karnataka. Other languages spoken are Telugu in Andhra Pradesh and Telangana, Tamil in Tami Nadu and Malayalam in Kerala.

Festivals and Holy Days : Andhra Pradesh is famous for its Kuchipudi Dance. Shiv Ratri, Makar Sankranti and Baisakhi festivals are celebrated there. Mysore in Karnataka celebrates Dashera, Eid and Navratri festivals. Kathakali is a well known dance of Kerala. Onam, Christmas, Eid, Shivratri are other festivals celebrated in Kerala. Bharat Natyam is very famous dance style of Tamil Nadu and Pongal is its main festival.



19.3 Kathakali

Life Style – Eastern India

The States of Bihar, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Odisha, West Bengal, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura, Sikkim, Meghalaya etc. are included in Eastern India. Of these, Odisha and West Bengal have sea coast.

Food : People in Bihar, Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and West Bengal take roti, vegetables , but use more rice in their meals. Rice is a staple diet in mountainous region. They also use pulses, green vegetables in their meals. ‘Rosogulla’ and ‘Sandesh’ are their favourite sweets.

Like to know...

Sathvo (satthu) is a special dish eaten in Bihar. Rea is a wide spread drink in Assam.

Dressing : Bihari people wear dhoti, zabbho, khes on shoulder and a Pagh (head gear). Women put on sari, petticoat and blouse. There is not much difference in the attire of people in Jharkhand, Assam and Odisha. Bengali ladies wear sari in Bengali style and gents put on plaited (with folds) dhoti and silken zabbho.

Dwellings : People in plain region live in houses made of bricks and cement. People in mountains use wood and bamboo in their houses. Slanting roofs are seen in the regions of heavy rainfall. In Bengal, there is a Pukur (small pond) in the rear of the house, fish is reared for daily use in their meals.

Language : Hindi is spoken in Jharkhand, Bihar and Chhattisgarh. Maithili, Bhojpuri and Magdhi are dialects spoken in Bihar. Assami in Assam, Udia in Odisha and Bengali in Bengal are other spoken languages in the respective states. Garo and Khasi languages are spoken in Meghalaya. Mizo dialect is used in Mizoram.

Festivals and Holy Days : Bihu of Assam and Odissi in Odisha are famous dance styles. The Chariot Procession of Jagannathpuri is world famous. Festivals of Chhath and Bhaiyaduj in Bihar and Durga Puja in Bengal are celebrated with great pomp. Thus, every state has its own festivals and holydays.

India is a secular country, so every state celebrates religious and national festivals. In India, festivals of all religions are celebrated without and partiality.



19.4 Chariot Procession (Jagannathpuri)

Like to know...

In different regions of India, people use the edible oil made from the oil seeds grown in that region; e.g. ground nut oil in Gujarat, mustard oil in North India and coconut oil in South India are used as edible oils.

Self Study

1. Answer the following questions in two – three sentences each :

- (1) What diversities are seen among the people of India ?
- (2) To which family do the languages of South India belong ?
- (3) State the major languages and dialects of Bihar.

2. Write short notes on the following :

- (1) Dresses of men and women in Bengal and in Eastern States.
- (2) Festivals and Holy Days of Western India.

3. Select proper options for the following questions and write answers :

- (1) People experiencing how much temperature put on cotton dresses with light colour ?
 (A) More (B) Less
 (C) Normal (D) Extreme
- (2) People of which state put on shoes made from camel's leather ?
 (A) Gujarat (B) Rajasthan
 (C) Maharashtra (D) Goa
- (3) Which language is spoken in Goa ?
 (A) Marathi (B) Hindi
 (C) Gujarati (D) Konkani
- (4) People of which state eat a variety of parothas ?
 (A) Jammu - Kashmir (B) Tamil Nadu
 (C) Assam (D) Punjab
- (5) Where is the Magh Fair held ?
 (A) Pushkar (B) Nasik
 (C) Allahabad (D) Ujjain
- (6) Of which state is 'Pongal' a main festival ?
 (A) Andhra Pradesh (B) Tamil Nadu
 (C) Meghalaya (D) Sikkim
- (7) Which type of relief is seen in Uttarakhand ?
 (A) Fertile plain (B) Mountainous
 (C) Coastal (D) None of these

Activity

- Arrange a regional dress competition.
- Prepare a bulletin by pasting pictures of dresses of every state.
- Collect books on recipes from the library and prepare a list of sweets of every state.
- Visit a fair held in your area with your guardian.

A disaster may be natural or man - induced, may be catastrophic or diastrophic, may have originated in the interior of the earth or in atmosphere, it is felt over extensive area on the earth and also results in devastation. If we examine a few phenomena, it will be clear that a disaster damages lives and property to a great extent. Some events like volcanic eruption, earthquake, tsunami etc. are the collective result of both natural as well as man – induced acts.

Some events bring pre-planned devastation and destruction, e.g. atomic attack by U.S. bombers over Hiroshima and Nagasaki cities of Japan in the second world war, whereas some events are results of human negligence or mistakes. e.g. Bhopal Gas Tragedy, Chernobyl Atomic Disaster of Russia.

Types of Disasters :

We are aware of the risks of disasters. To decide the strategy for relief work. it is necessary to know the reasons and responsible situations. It is important to know these with reference to overall preparation for relief work. Experts on Disaster Management have divided the disasters into two categories :

(1) Natural Disasters : These include flood, cyclone, tsunami, drought, earthquake, volcano, forest fire etc. Of these, a forecast is possible for floods, cyclone, tsunami and drought, while it is not possible to forecast earthquake, volcanic eruption, forest fire.

(2) Man - induced Disasters : Here fire, industrial accidents, bomb explosions, riots etc. are included.

(1) Natural Disasters :

Flood : By flood, we generally mean an extensive land area remaining submerged under water continuously for several days. People associate flood with river, when river water overflows its banks and the nearby land area comes under water. Flood is a natural event and is the result of continuous heavy rainfall. Floods become dangerous when some construction is carried out ignoring human activities, drainage pattern, slope of the land etc., and damage lives and property on a large scale.

What to do :

- Collect your precious and personal requirements and take refuge at a safer place.
- Put water, dry breakfast, candles, lanterns, matchbox in a plastic box so that they do not get wet, and they should be kept with you.
- Do not keep the children hungry.
- After the flood recedes, drink only boiled water.
- Radio, Mobile phone should be kept with you invariably.
- Be aware of snakes. They may come to dry places. Keep a bamboo stick to drive them away.

What not to do :

- Do not eat food prepared in flood water.
- Do not move out without collecting authentic information about the routes and situations before moving to a safer place.

Cyclone : Due to atmospheric disturbances, a sudden strike is made by severe storms. These storms are known as Cyclone in Indian sub-continent, Hurricane and Tornado in USA, as Typhoon along the coasts of china and Japan. These severe atmospheric storms are created due to unequal atmospheric pressure. Such storms, or cyclones, create devastation over the area over which they pass. Its devastating effects are felt along the coasts of eastern India and Kachchh-Saurashtra.

What to do :

- Keep viewing the news bulletins on TV - Radio to know the anticipated time of the on-coming storms.
- Those who have a radio should keep an extra battery ready.
- Mobile phone should be kept fully charged in advance. If you have a powerback instrument, it should also be charged fully in advance.
- Listen carefully to the instructions, warnings, broadcast over radio and implement them.
- Stay away from rumours.
- Store additional food, dry breakfast and drinking water as per need.
- Keep provision of food and medicines, necessary for children and old people.
- If the rescue team tells you to vacate your home, cooperated with them.
- Use pure and safe drinking water.

- If you have taken shelter in a shelterhome, created by the Government or any NGO, then follow their instructions and do not leave the premises without their instructions.
- Do not keep your domesticated animals tied up to their posts. If they are free, they can defend themselves in a better way.

What not to do :

- Do not pay any attention to gossips or rumours, except for the instructions issued by the Weather Department on Radio.
- If the atmosphere calms down suddenly, rain stops, wind becomes stand still, even then do not go in open area. Wind or rainfall, may strike suddenly.
- Do not touch electric poles or loose wires, stay away from them.
- Do not take shelter near bigger hoardings or large trees.

Earthquake : An earthquake in general means the shaking of the surface of the earth. Due to tectonic activities in the interior of the earth, an earthquake is felt. Its major areas are the regions with weaker relief on the surface of the earth. Probable earthquake regions can be identified, but an earthquake can not be forecast. Thus, much damage is caused in the absence of a forecast.

What to do :

- During an earthquake, stay beneath a large bench or a table.
- If you are in a school, sit beneath a bench.
- If you are in an open space, stay away from buildings, balcony, electric power lines and electric poles.
- If you are driving a vehicle, then bring your vehicle to a halt over or below a bridge, keep away from electric poles, power lines and traffic signals.
- Remain seated in your vehicle till the earthquake tremours are not over.
- Even after the earthquake tremours are over, few things like fridge, photographs on the wall, ceiling fans etc. may fall down afterwards, so keep away from them.
- For instructions or guidance about the event, listen to the local radio.
- New buildings under construction should be made earthquake proof.

What not to do :

- Do not shout or flee in panic.
- Do not attempt to prevent the things falling down after the earthquake tremours.
- Do not use elevators to go down.
- If you are in a house, do not stand near wooden cabinets (cupboard), safes, mirrors or a glass chandelier.
- Do not light a match stick or a Lighter, or do not switch on electric gadgets before confirming that the cooking gas is not leaking, because leaking gas may explode.
- Do not put a phone call unless for emergency medical help or fire. A prompt phone call may interrupt telephone network which may obstruct the relief work.

Tsunami : The destructive and powerful sea waves are called Tsunami. These are generated at the sea bottom due to earthquake having a rating of 7 or more on Richter scale, or by a volcanic eruption with in sea or by a large scale land slide on ocean floors. Tsunami means '**destructing waves**' in Japanese language. Tsunami occurs mostly due to earthquakes on ocean floors, so these are also known as oceanic earthquake waves. These waves travel very fast in circular pattern from the place of their origin. In deep sea, these waves are not seen distinctly due to their shorter wave heights, but when they approach coasts and shallow sea, they turn into devastating form. Its velocity reduces near coasts but height increases. So, these waves surge ahead in the form of a wall near sea coast and cause devastation.

More than 2 lakh people from Thailand, India, Indonesia, Sri Lanka and other South - Eastern countries became victim of highly destructive Tsunami on 26th December, 2004.

With modern equipments a forecast and a nearly exact time of the striking of a tsunami can be predicted. In future, more deaths can be prevented with due precautions.

What to do :

- With tsunami warning, move to a safer place away from sea coast.
- Keep a radio handy and act according to the instructions received from the authorities.
- Construction of new buildings and societies should be carried out considering the tsunami impact.
- Mangrove reduces the overall impact of tsunami, so attempts should be made to expand their span.

What not to do :

- Do not take shelter on tall buildings, because these buildings may collapse due to destructive waves.
- After the tsunami recedes, do not approach sea coast till the instructions are received from the authorities.

Drought : A drought is a highly destructive hazard, leaving a long lasting impact. It is connected with water and food which are very much needed for the existence of living organisms. The problem of drought occurs in regions of monsoon climate where the rainfall is irregular and is very scanty. This is so because the agricultural crops, food grains and living organisms depend completely on water. The shortage is created due to water crisis. Under such conditions, heavy damage is done to agriculture and natural vegetation. Earlier many people died of starvation during a drought, but now it could be reduced due to transportation and well planned management.

What to do :

- Drip irrigation in agriculture should be intensified.
- Food rationing and use of water should be planned after estimating their availability.
- Arrangement should be made for fair price distribution of food grains and relief work.
- Construction activity should be stopped except for the inevitable work.

What not to do :

- To prevent the food wastage, do not hold large scale dinner parties.
- Citizens should not hoard food grains or fodder.

Forest Fire : A forest fire is the fire which occurs in forests and creates devastation. Except for lightning, all other reasons for a forest fire are man - induced. Among them, throwing of burnt butts of cigarettes - bidies, or match sticks, burning things left by tourists, pilgrims or shepherds etc. are the major reasons. There are more probabilities of a forest fire occurring during a dry season after autumn. At that time, the dry grass and fallen tree leaves act as fuel. This situation is responsible for the spread of forest fire.

When both wind and inflammable fuel are dry, they form the basis of forest fire which spreads faster during windy days of more temperature and less humidity. Some trees ooze out oily and inflammable material, so the fire spreads faster.

Once the forest fire starts, it spreads in the directions of wind, advancing at a velocity of about 15 km per hour on all sides. Once it starts and if attempts are not made promptly to extinguish it, the forest fire would stop only under two situations : (i) the forest fire is extinguished completely by itself, or (ii) due to heavy rain.

Due to forest fire, smoke and spark, rising high with the warm air current, create a risk of fire among the nearby settlements.

What to do :

- Act according to the instructions from Forest Department.
- Arrange special patrolling in forests during dry seasons.
- Employees of forest department should be trained for extinguishing forest fire.

What not to do :

- While travelling through a forest, do not throw a burning bidi or other things.
- People living in settlements near the forest fire area, should not ignore the instructions from Forest Department.

(2) Man-induced Disasters :

Those events which take place due to direct or indirect, knowingly or unknowingly done by men, unawareness or ignorance and failure of human machinery etc. which cause heavy damage to human life and property, are called man - induced Disasters.

Industrial Accidents : In industrial townships, mills, factories etc. there is a chance of accidents even after enough precautions are taken. Such accidents result into deaths of people, live stock and damage to property. Besides, the environment is also affected. Human errors are at the base of industrial accidents. Men undertake the management and care of various machines of industrial processes, and collection, transfer and distribution of the manufactured goods. At every stage, an accident cannot be ruled out.

Bhopal Gas Tragedy : Union Carbide, located at Bhopal which is the capital of Madhya Pradesh, used to produce insecticides. In the process of production a poisonous gas MIC was used. This gas was stored in large tanks. In the early morning of 3rd December, 1984, this poisonous MIC gas started leaking from the tanks, which lasted for about 40 minutes. Due to this event, which took place in early morning, the gas very quickly spread over the densely populated area in Bhopal. According to official figures, about 2500 people died and thousands of residents in Bhopal were affected by this poisonous gas. Besides people, the gas also killed thousands of birds and animals. Drinking water, reservoirs, land, unborn babies, new born babies, pregnant women etc. were victims of its adverse effects. While 10,000 people became handicapped permanently, 1.5 lakh people were handicapped partially.

Rescue Operations during Gas Leakage :**What to do :**

- Install modern warning system for getting advance information about gas leakage.
- Pre-determine the high level measures for safety in factories and support it.
- If the gas leaks during its transfer, the gas tanker should be driven away from human settlements.
- Observe the wind direction and run into its opposite direction.
- Do not treat breathlessness, burning eyes etc. by yourself, but seek medical guidance immediately.
- Fainted or weak people should be immediately shifted from the affected area.
- Inform fire Brigade and Police.
- Park the vehicles in such a way that they do not obstruct the vehicles of Rescue operations.

What not to do :

- During Rescue Operations, persons who are not associated with the work should not gather around.
- Do not enter the affected area till the area under gas leakage is declared totally safe by the authorities.
- Do not join the rescue operation without proper training in rescue operations and necessary equipments.

Viral Diseases : When a large number of people over much wider area become victim of any disease, it is called epidemic. People lose their lives due to the disease. There is a faster increase in the number of patients of viral diseases than the general diseases. Till to-day, thousands of people have been victims of diseases like dengue, ebola, swineflu, influenza etc. These diseases are very much feared. In earlier times, lakhs of people were victims of plague. However, such deadly diseases are controlled now with the help of scientific inventions and anti-viral vaccines for safety. Along with it, with new viral diseases, and those diseases which cannot be cured by traditional medicines, there is always a danger of widespread deaths on mankind.

During the plague epidemic of Surat in September 1994, and recently swine flu and dengue epidemics, many agencies took preventive steps to prevent deaths.

Safety Remedies for viral Diseases :

- An important step to be safe from viral diseases is to be vigilant about infection.
- People should be acquainted with the reasons, results and safety about diseases through propaganda and Transmissions.
- Take the anti - disease vaccines.
- Arrange for a special separate ward for patients' treatment.
- Take steps as per the guidelines and instructions, issued by World Health Organization (WHO), an International Institution, to curb the viral diseases.

Terrorist Attacks : We all know that since last decade of the last century, the terrorist activity in the entire world has become very much wicked. In reality, terrorism does not care for any race, community or a region. It is the enemy of mankind. The immoral destructive acts performed by a person or a group is called Terrorism. Inhuman acts like destruction of property, creating an atmosphere of fear and thereby draw attention towards their demands, genocide, abduction etc. are terrorists' weapons. Nowadays, the terrorism has spread in many countries of the world. In recent times, no country is safe from terrorism.

Some Terrorist Acts of the World : On 9th September, 2001, a series of suicidal attacks were made in U.S.A. by a terrorist organization. About 19 terrorists highjacked 4 passenger Jet planes of which 2 planes were dashed against the Twin Towers in New York city. Due to this, all passengers on board and many people working in these towers were killed within few minutes. Many people were injured as their houses collapsed. Of the other two planes, one dashed with the Pentagon and the other dashed into a farm in Pennsylvania. There was no survivor from these two planes. In this attack, about 3000 people were victimised and more than 6000 were injured.

On 13th December, 2001, five terrorists from one terrorist organisation attacked the Indian Parliament building and took the complex under its ban by firing without any restraint. Indian Army soldiers staked their lives and defied the plan of nation's enemies to dissolve the Parliament, which is like a holy Temple of Democracy. About 8 security guards became martyrs and 16 were wounded.

On the night of 26 November, 2008 a series of bomb blasts and firing took place near well known hotels and some important places in Mumbai at a regular interval. About 137 persons were injured. In some well known hotels, the terrorists kept many people under custody. The Central Government sent 200 NSG (National Security Guards) Commandos, 50 military commandos and 5 battalions to control the situation. After two day's of struggle, all the terrorists. equipped with modern armaments were killed.

In December 2014, about 141 persons, including 132 innocent students were killed in a terrorist attack on an Army school, located in the cantonment area of Peshawar in Pakistan.

What to do :

- Inform the police about any doubtful behaviour of any person.
- Do not touch any unclaimed thing in public places, such as shopping malls, cinemas, gardens, religious places etc.
- Cooperate in security check for safety reasons.
- If you rent your house, register it with the nearest police station. This is required under legal provisions.
- Public places should be well equipped with CCTV cameras.
- While travelling in a bus or train, if any person is noticed having left leaving his luggage behind, inform the responsible authorities immediately.
- If your neighbour is single, does not mingle with local people, is working on computer till late night, then inform the police about his/her behaviour.
- Inform Police about unclaimed vehicles.

What not to do :

- Do not accept any goods or parcel from any unknown person.

- Do not rent your house to an unknown person without thorough inquiry about him.
- Do not sell your home, mobile phone or a vehicle to any unknown person.

Riots : This problem is faced by many countries in the world. If we examine the general characteristics of any riot, it is noticed that most of the persons are not aware of its root cause or purpose. Their presence is only for crowding or for imitation. Such crowd which gathers without any common purpose or interest, seems to disturb the peace intentionally. Such riots make the administrative set-up, which is established by Law, unstable.

Sometimes when such riots take a political colour and turn into a revolt, or are transformed into a communal riot, the social well-being and harmony are at risk. Innocent citizens have to suffer a lot due to such riots. Life sustenance of labourers becomes very difficult. Moreover, a lot of life and property are damaged.

It creates a challenge to maintain the unity and integrity of the nation.

What to do :

- Prevent talks which spread rumours and violence.
- Form a peace committee in your residential area and be actively involved.
- Perform your civil duties by helping those affected by the riot.

What not to do :

- Do not be instrumental in spreading rumours.
- Do not violate the instructions or curfew declared by the authority to maintain Law and order.
- Do not believe and spread baseless talks appearing in social media.

Terrorists sometimes hijack a bus, train or a plane to get their demands met with for releasing their accomplices from jail or for other demands. They bring pressure by taking the passengers into custody. In such circumstances, the family members of the persons taken as hostages should maintain peace and support the working of the Administration. In such instances, plans are implemented to relieve the citizen either by commando operations or through the talks with the terrorists.

Traffic problems :

We have seen vehicles plying at a snail's speed and very close to each other on the roads of large cities. This situation is called Traffic Jam. When the means of transport come to a halt on the roads, the traffic problems occur. Such a situation occurs frequently on the busy roads of larger cities. The vehicular traffic comes almost to a stand still during peak hours of commuting. At Such though times, the vehicle drivers, travellers and pedestrians experience mental stress. It takes time to control the situation or to re-start the vehicular traffic. Smoke from vehicles and other dirty things create air and noise pollution. This affects the public hygiene of that region and also the growth of vegetation.

Growing urbanization has created the traffic jam problems in almost all large cities. There is a long queue of vehicles. When those vehicles which undertake relief work and rescue operations are stranded over the road, people lose their life, e.g. stranding of 108 ambulance.

Increase in traffic, negligence of drivers and due to the ignorance in understanding the signs and symbols put along the road, cause many accidents every year and many people lose their lives. Death-rate in India is very high due to the accidents on the roads. Some times, a victim of an accident may become invalid permanently.

Incidences occur in newspaper frequently about the accidents caused by minors driving a vehicle. On the highways, big disasters are caused due to heavy vehicular traffic and uncontrolled speedy vehicles. Accidents occur at unmanned railway crossings are the result of undue haste or ignoring the instructions shown there.

Heavy traffic causes loss of time as well as fuel. If timely effective steps are not taken, advanced planning for traffic management and dedication to observe them are not implemented, then it is going to create risks of lives in the days to follow without and doubt.

What to do ?

- Develop suburban townships near larger cities and connect them intensely by facilitating public transport systems.

- Separate tracks should be prepared for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Encroachments on the roads must be removed.
- Vehicles going at a very low speed or the vehicles pulled by men or by animals should be banned during peak hours.
- Information regarding the traffic rules should be conveyed to the citizen through the educational advertisements and public awareness programmes.
- People going to their job place or business at the same place during same time should arrange for 'car pool' instead of going by individual separate vehicles.
- Digging and repairing work along the roads should be completed immediately.
- A tradition should be developed to take out the processions, marriage processions or religious processions during lean period (hours) instead of peak hours of vehicular traffic.
- At the time of traffic jam, keep your vehicle in proper lane.
- In infrastructure like express high ways, overbridges, flyovers, ring roads and by pass roads should be developed.
- Every person, going for the job, should invariably use public transport at least once a week.
- Use seat belts while driving a car.
- Provision of heavy penalty should be made for the drivers who are drunk, who do not have their driving licence, who drive recklessly and for those who violate traffic rules.

What not to do ?

- Do not violate the traffic rules.
- Very old vehicles should not be used.
- Transportation of goods should not be carried out except for night time and early morning.
- Do not deface the instruction boards, signs or symbols on the roads. These are meant for vehicle drivers.
- Do not alter the design of the vehicle.
- Do not use cell phones (mobiles) while driving.
- Do not drive a vehicle without putting on the seat belt or the helmet.
- A wayfarer crossing rails or road should not use ear phones or cell phones (mobiles).
- Do not enter into arguments with persons who control the traffic regarding their instructions.
- Guardians should not allow their minor children to drive vehicles. It is prohibited by Law.
- Do not join a mob and obstruct the relief and safety work at the place of an accident due to your inquisitiveness.

Impact of Disasters on Human Life :

Disasters affect almost every body, but its maximum ill effects are felt by the poor and under privileged people. The effects of disasters can be grouped into four categories, as under.

Effects on Relief : There is a heavy damage or a total loss of movable and immovable property. Infrastructural facilities like roads, railways, bridge, electricity, gas, telecommunication facilities etc. are heavily damaged and cannot be restored immediately. Loss of fertile agricultural land due to floods is also a loss which cannot be compensated even after a prolonged time.

Effects on Human Life : Many people either die due to a disaster or become permanently handicapped. Health of common citizen deteriorates. Those who lose their relatives are in intense trauma or desperate. It is difficult to bring them out of the trauma. Situation of many orphan children and elderly people becomes very awkward when their support is lost. Their rehabilitation needs very intense efforts. People have to face many difficulties in life.

Effects on Economy : A huge capital has to be created for rehabilitation work after a disaster. It affects the routine developmental work. Due to shortage of capital, the completion of projects is delayed. A problem of unemployment emerges till the industrial units are re-activated. Economy of disaster affected area becomes weaker.

Social Effects of Disasters : Migration or fleeing away by people affects the social structure of the area affected by disaster. Social festivals and public celebrations become uninteresting compared to earlier time. It takes many years to restore the original charm. Social organizations become weaker due to the changes in social network.

Rehabilitation after the Disaster :

At the time of a disaster, first comes the rescue operation, followed by compensation or relief and lastly the rehabilitation, which differs according to disasters. Many buildings have to be re-constructed after an earthquake, flood or a cyclone. New employment has to be created after drought, and provision for farm implements has to be made in agricultural field. After viral epidemics, programmes of mass education and public awareness have to be arranged for safety in future. Rehabilitation work has to be carried out under many obstacles since infrastructural facilities are damaged. It is difficult to rehabilitate a family where there is one or two survivors. If the services of a psychiatrist is not provided timely to persons under trauma after witnessing a disaster, it may bring adverse results. Training and employment are necessary to those survivors who become handicapped permanently.

Thus, the rehabilitation work after a disaster is a very challenging one. It can be fulfilled only through proper planning, implemented step by step.

Self Study**1. Answer the following questions as directed :**

- (1) What should be done during flood ?
- (2) Give a brief account of tsunami.
- (3) What should not be done at the time of gas leakage ?
- (4) Discuss the remedies to remain safe from viral diseases.

2. Answer the following questions in details :

- (1) Describe in details the effects of disaster on human life.
- (2) Describe the process of rehabilitation after a disaster - write notes.

3. Select a proper option and write answer :

- (1) Which of the following is a man - induced disaster ?
(A) Earthquake (B) Cyclone (C) Flood (D) Riot
- (2) With what event do people associate floods ?
(A) River (B) Ocean (C) Mountain (D) Island
- (3) After the flood recedes, which filtered water would you use to drink ?
(A) Twice filtered (B) Running current (C) Clean looking (D) Boiled
- (4) The stormy winds created due to atmospheric disturbances in USA...
(A) Typhoon (B) Hurricane (C) Willey - Willey (D) Tornado
- (5) Meaning of Tsunami in Japanese language...
(A) Tidal waves (B) Whirlpool Waves (C) Destructive waves (D) Earthquake Waves
- (6) The gas leaked during Bhopal Gas Tragedy...
(A) Ozone (B) Mic (C) Sulphur Dioxide (D) Mithane

Students Activity

- Collect books on Disaster management from the library and read.
 - With teacher's help, prepare posters showing the precautions to be taken during a disaster and exhibit them on public places in the village.
 - Arrange a mock-drill of an earthquake in the school.
 - Under your teacher's guidance, visit the following websites and gather information.
- www.ndma.gov.in
 - www.ndmindia.nic.in
 - www.disastermgmt.org
 - www.dmibhopal.nic.in
 - www.gsdma.org

Like to know : Annals of Earthquakes in India

Sr. No.	Date	Location	Intensity on Richter scale
1.	12 May, 2015	North & North - East India	7.3
2.	25 April, 2015	North & North - East India	7.8
3.	21 March, 2014	Andaman - Nicobar Is.	6.7
4.	25 April, 2012	Andaman - Nicobar Is.	6.2
5.	5 March, 2012	New Delhi	5.2
6.	18 September, 2011	Gangtok (Sikkim)	6.9
7.	10 August, 2009	Andaman Is.	7.7
8.	8 October, 2005	Kashmir	7.6
9.	26 December, 2004	Indian Ocean	9.1
10.	26 January, 2001	Kachchh (Gujarat)	7.6/7.7
11.	29 March, 1999	Chamoli (Uttarakhand)	6.8
12.	22 May, 1997	Jabalpur (Madhya Pradesh)	6.0
13.	30 September, 1993	Latur (Maharashtra)	6.2
14.	20 October, 1991	Uttarakhand	7.0
15.	20 August, 1988	Nepal - India Border	6.3/6.7
16.	19 January, 1975	Kinnaure (Himachal Pradesh)	6.8
17.	21 July, 1956	Anjar (Kachchh)	6.1
18.	15 August, 1950	Arunachal Pradesh	8.7
19.	26 June, 1941	Andaman Is.	8.1
20.	4 April, 1905	Himachal Pradesh	7.8
21.	12 June, 1897	Shillong	8.3
22.	31 December, 1881	Andaman Is.	7.9
23.	16 June, 1819	Kachchh (Gujarat)	8.2

